

# NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR THE HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES ANNUAL REPORT 2022



higher education  
& training

Department:  
Higher Education and Training  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



NATIONAL INSTITUTE  
FOR THE HUMANITIES  
AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

# ACRONYMS

|                 |                                                                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>AFS</b>      | Annual Financial Statements                                                  |
| <b>ANDC</b>     | Annual National Doctoral Conference                                          |
| <b>ANC</b>      | African National Congress                                                    |
| <b>APP</b>      | African Pathways Programme                                                   |
| <b>BRICS</b>    | Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa                                |
| <b>BTT</b>      | BRICS Think Tank                                                             |
| <b>BTTC</b>     | BRICS Think Tank Council                                                     |
| <b>CASS</b>     | Chinese Academy of Social Sciences                                           |
| <b>CEO</b>      | Chief Executive Officer                                                      |
| <b>CFO</b>      | Chief Financial Officer                                                      |
| <b>CODESRIA</b> | Council for the Development of Social Science Research in Africa             |
| <b>DHET</b>     | Department of Higher Education and Training                                  |
| <b>DIRCO</b>    | Department of International Relations and Cooperation                        |
| <b>DUT</b>      | Durban University of Technology                                              |
| <b>FY</b>       | Financial Year                                                               |
| <b>HEI</b>      | Higher Education Institution                                                 |
| <b>HESTIL</b>   | Higher Education, Science, Technology and Innovation Institutional Landscape |
| <b>HR</b>       | Human Resources                                                              |
| <b>HSRC</b>     | Human Sciences Research Council                                              |
| <b>HSS</b>      | Humanities and Social Sciences                                               |
| <b>ICSSR</b>    | Indian Council of Social Science Research                                    |
| <b>IGD</b>      | Institute for Global Dialogue                                                |
| <b>MA</b>       | Master of Arts                                                               |
| <b>MISTRA</b>   | Mapungubwe Institute for Strategic Reflection                                |
| <b>NGO</b>      | Non-Governmental Organisation                                                |
| <b>NIHSS</b>    | National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences                    |

|                |                                             |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>NMP</b>     | National Mentorship Programme               |
| <b>NMU</b>     | Nelson Mandela University                   |
| <b>NSF</b>     | National Skills Fund                        |
| <b>OERs</b>    | Open Educational Resources                  |
| <b>PAA</b>     | Public Audit Act                            |
| <b>PFMA</b>    | Public Finance Management Act               |
| <b>PhD</b>     | Doctor of Philosophy                        |
| <b>RU</b>      | Rhodes University                           |
| <b>SA</b>      | South Africa                                |
| <b>SABTT</b>   | South African BRICS Think Tank              |
| <b>SAHUDA</b>  | South African Humanities Deans' Association |
| <b>SCM</b>     | Supply Chain Management                     |
| <b>SDGs</b>    | Sustainable Development Goals               |
| <b>SU</b>      | Stellenbosch University                     |
| <b>TUT</b>     | Tshwane University of Technology            |
| <b>UCT</b>     | University of Cape Town                     |
| <b>UFS</b>     | University of the Free State                |
| <b>UKZN</b>    | University of KwaZulu-Natal                 |
| <b>UL</b>      | University of Limpopo                       |
| <b>Unisa</b>   | University of South Africa                  |
| <b>UNIVEN</b>  | University of Venda                         |
| <b>UniZulu</b> | University of Zululand                      |
| <b>UP</b>      | University of Pretoria                      |
| <b>UWC</b>     | University of the Western Cape              |
| <b>Wits</b>    | University of the Witwatersrand             |



# CONTENTS

---

|                                              |           |                                        |            |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Section A</b>                             | <b>4</b>  | <b>Section D</b>                       | <b>96</b>  |
| <b>GENERAL INFORMATION</b>                   |           | <b>CORPORATE GOVERNANCE</b>            |            |
| A statutory body                             | 5         | NIHSS Board                            | 97         |
| NIHSS mandate                                | 5         | Board remuneration                     | 97         |
| Vision and mission                           | 5         | Meetings of the Board                  | 97         |
| Core academic programmes                     | 6         | Board committees                       | 98         |
| Shared guiding principles                    | 6         | Risk management and assessment         | 100        |
| Internal values                              | 7         | Internal controls                      | 100        |
| Organisational structure                     | 8         |                                        |            |
| Operating context                            | 8         | <b>Section E</b>                       | <b>102</b> |
| NIHSS strategic objectives                   | 9         | <b>STAKEHOLDER RELATIONS</b>           |            |
| Chairperson's foreword                       | 11        |                                        |            |
| Message from the CEO                         | 12        | <b>Section F</b>                       | <b>106</b> |
|                                              |           | <b>ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</b>     |            |
| <b>Section B</b>                             | <b>16</b> | <b>FOR 2021/22</b>                     |            |
| <b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND PERFORMANCE</b>  |           | Report by the Audit and Risk Committee | 107        |
| Strategic objectives and performance 2021/22 | 17        | Chief Financial Officer's report       | 109        |
| Strategic programme interventions            | 20        | Report of the Auditor-General          | 111        |
|                                              |           | Annual Financial Statements            | 114        |
| <b>Section C</b>                             | <b>90</b> |                                        |            |
| <b>HUMAN RESOURCES AND ADMINISTRATION</b>    |           |                                        |            |
| Staff training and development               | 91        |                                        |            |
| Occupational health and safety               | 91        |                                        |            |
| HR oversight statistics                      | 92        |                                        |            |
| Equity targets and employment equity status  | 94        |                                        |            |



# SECTION A



## GENERAL INFORMATION



The NIHSS was formed after an extensive investigation and consultative process in 2010 and 2011 revealed that the humanities and social sciences (HSS) in South Africa were in great need of revitalisation and renewal to reverse declines in university enrolments, graduation rates, research output and funding. This investigation culminated in the HSS Charter of 2011 which recommended, among other things, that a national institute be established to enhance and support the HSS in South Africa and beyond, and to advise the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation on HSS matters.

Now in its eighth year, the NIHSS is a publicly funded organisation that works with higher education partners to fund, mentor and support over 420 PhD students and 60 postdoctoral research fellows, facilitate catalytic research within a post-apartheid and post-colonial frame, support international research collaborations and coordinate South Africa's academic contributions to BRICS, consisting of Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa.

## A STATUTORY BODY

The Institute was formally established on 13 December 2013 in terms of Section 38C of the Higher Education Act 101 of 1997. Its mandate, governance, functions, name and structures were set out in the NIHSS regulations contained in Government Gazette No 37118 of 5 December 2013. Other legislation that influences the NIHSS is the Skills Development Act 97 of 1998.

Although publicly funded, the NIHSS is not legally governed by the Public Finance Management Act 1 of 1999, as it is not listed within National Treasury's schedule of public entities. However, the Institute has chosen to adopt certain prescripts of the PFMA for the purposes of best practice.

The NIHSS has two sources of funding. Its operational budget and South African BRICS Think Tank (SABTT) activities are fully funded by the Department of Higher Education and Training, while the National Skills Fund uses designated funds to support the Institute's academic programmes. These are the NIHSS Doctoral Schools and Scholarship Programme, Catalytic Research Projects, Humanities Hubs and Working Groups.

## NIHSS MANDATE

The NIHSS's core mandate of funding and facilitating PhD programmes, catalytic research and international research collaborations was expanded in 2015 when it became the custodian of the SABTT, responsible for coordinating and managing South Africa's involvement in BRICS academic activities and fostering research collaborations between South Africa, other African countries and countries of the Global South.

## VISION AND MISSION

The vision of the Institute is of a new HSS that is at the epicentre of scholarship, pedagogy, community practice and social responsibility in Africa. Complementing this vision is the NIHSS mission to redress existing deficits and to fund, coordinate and convene academic and research programmes, projects, collaborations and activities in the HSS disciplines within and through South African public universities.

## CORE ACADEMIC PROGRAMMES

The NIHSS creates value by enabling doctoral and postdoctoral scholarship, serving as a catalyst for change in research and facilitating international research collaborations:

# 1

### Enabling PhD scholarship

This entails building capacity and growing the number of doctoral and postdoctoral fellows (via scholarships) in the HSS through:

- the NIHSS National Mentorship Programme
- the African Pathways Programme
- Mobility Grants

# 2

### Serving as a catalyst for change in research

The Institute increases the scale and quality of HSS research outputs, fast-tracks research in new areas, strengthens previously neglected HSS disciplines and changes the way the HSS produce knowledge.

The vehicles for this are:

- Catalytic Research Projects
- Working Groups
- Professional Associations
- Humanities Hubs

# 3

### International research collaborations

The NIHSS forges collaborations on the continent and between developing economies, networking South African researchers with researchers in the Global South through the BRICS programme and other international collaborations.

## SHARED GUIDING PRINCIPLES

When conceptualising, convening and implementing academic programmes and projects, the NIHSS adheres to five guiding principles:

# 1

**Cooperation and the establishment of communities of scholarship** – The Institute works across organisational and disciplinary boundaries to establish communities of collaborating scholars.

# 2

**Norms-driven internationalisation** – The NIHSS is open to dialogue with its Northern counterparts but focuses specifically on strengthening Africa-wide South-South collaborations.

# 3

**Social responsibility and equity** – The Institute is mindful that research and development funded with taxpayers' money should have value to society and respond to the socio-economic problems that face South Africa and its citizens today.

# 4

**Functional differentiation as opposed to resource differentiation** – Rather than preserving a higher education and research system based on differentiation through resource inequality, the NIHSS provides opportunities to eradicate resource inequality and encourages differentiation in priorities and visions to cater for diversity.

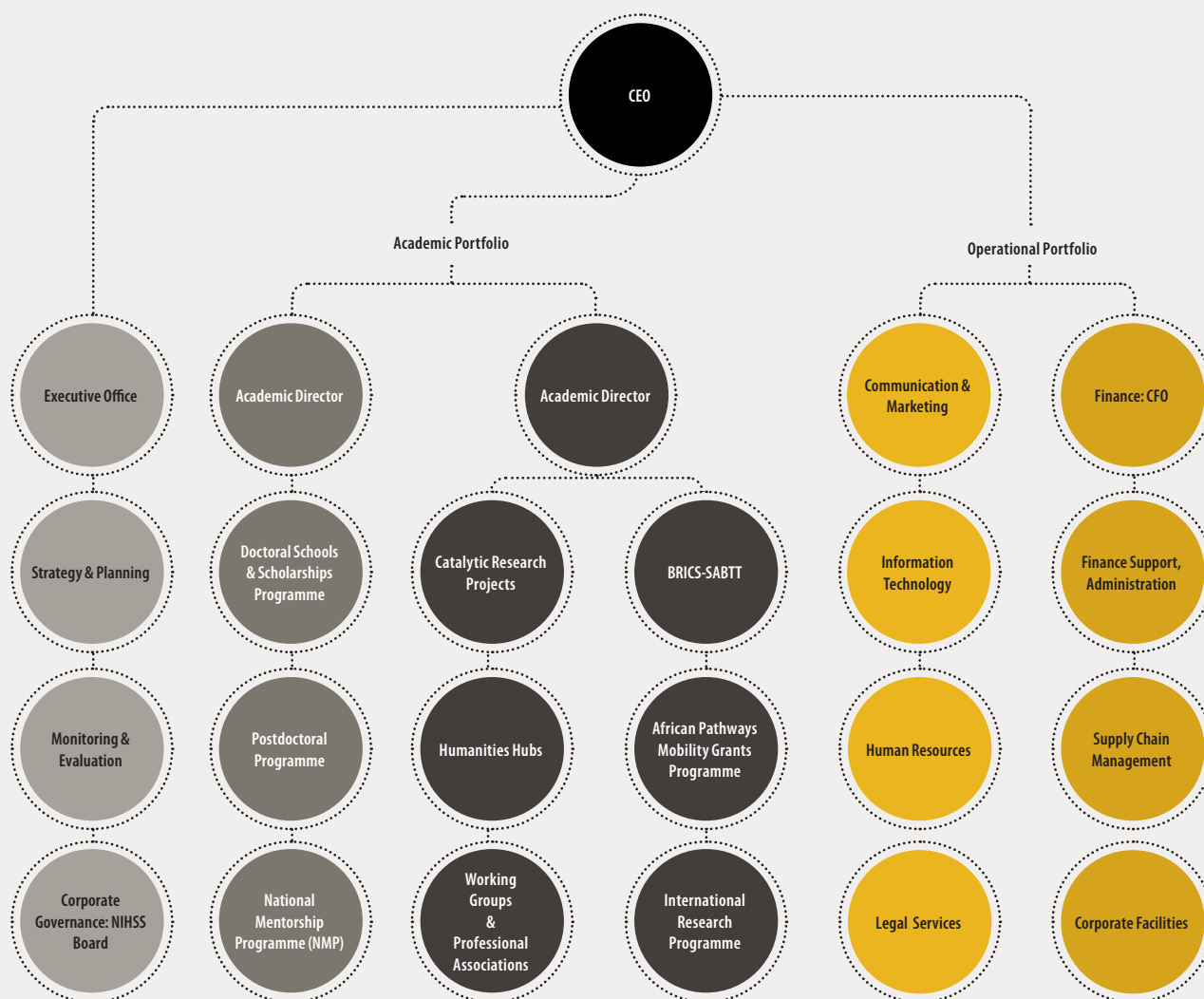
# 5

**Transformative relevance** – The NIHSS works unrelentingly to open up new areas of research, which in turn have a multiplier effect on future research projects and serious transformative implications for the curriculum in the humanities and social sciences.





# INTERNAL VALUES



## ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

The Institute's structure consists of three units: the Academic Portfolio, Operational Portfolio and the Executive Office.

- 1 The Academic Portfolio** is the largest organisational unit and is responsible for the Institute's academic, research and international programmes.
- 2 The Operational Portfolio** provides administrative, financial, supply chain management, information technology, marketing and communication, human resources and legal services.
- 3 The Executive Office** is responsible for strategy and planning, monitoring and evaluation and corporate governance support to the NIHSS Board.

All three units report directly to the Chief Executive Officer of the Institute, who is accountable to the Board for the performance of the NIHSS.

## OPERATING CONTEXT

Change and fluidity are inherent characteristics of the South African higher education sector, which in many respects mirrors and often amplifies the dynamics in the broader society, particularly its persisting inequalities, polarisation and politicisation, extreme resource constraints and escalating pressure for fundamental change. Injecting a further layer of complexity to this already potent mix was the outbreak of the Covid-19 pandemic, throwing academic programmes into disarray and forcing higher education role players to engage in a complete rethink of their modus operandi.

This operating context calls for considerable agility to navigate and the NIHSS is fortunate to possess that, not only by virtue of being a lean, young organisation but because its very establishment in 2013 was rooted in an understanding of a society in transition and the commitment to being part of its transformation. As an organisation that is itself already transformed, from the composition of its workforce to the research it supports, the scholars it funds and the debates it stimulates, the Institute is not an entity on the outside looking in but one grounded in the realities of a country – and continent – striving for equity and social justice.



# NIHSS STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES



**Dr Bonginkosi Blade Nzimande**  
Minister of Higher Education,  
Science and Innovation



**Mr Buti Manamela**  
Deputy Minister of Higher  
Education, Science and Innovation



**higher education  
& training**

Department:  
Higher Education and Training  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Professor Ari Sitas,  
founding Board member  
and Board Chairperson,  
2014-2022



## CHAIRPERSON'S FOREWORD

This report needs no introduction: each page confirms the Institute's performance ethic and serves as a step-by-step description of its rigour in meeting its mandate.

On behalf of the Board, I would like to thank the staff, the management team and its leadership in Professor Sarah Mosoetsa for a job well done. We cannot be more thankful than receiving yet another clean audit and read how all targets were more than achieved.

We would also like to thank the South African Humanities Deans' Association (SAHUDA) and our Mentors for their support and dedication. Thanks need to be extended to the Department and its leadership for support and care.

Our fields of research and study are called to do more than ever as the world struggles with grand disruptions that threaten to overwhelm us all. We have not come out of the current pandemic before we come to gauge the consequences of a persistent ecosystems crisis, economic volatility and an escalation of military spending and the talk of a third world war.

We sense and study our own (national) polarisations around race, class, gender and sexuality, the growing

xenocidal calls and our livelihoods' chances lying in tatters. There is serious transformation work that needs be done, and our fields of research and knowledge production are stretched to breaking point. And as we all know our teaching demands through the pandemic were not fulfilled without traumata.

In the seemingly endless hours of lockdown, our graduates in the media, in the arts and especially music, as well as our thinkers and analysts, kept us hoping and coping. It was a hard time of loss and fear.

Yet, you (the "you" of the lecture hall and the online grind) persisted and the Institute tried and tries to create ways to ease your more than demanding work. If we turn to this year's award ceremony, the level of creativity in our fields is more than inspiring. You more than persist, you excel!

For many of us on the Board this marks the last year of our service. We tried our best and we wish the new Board all the best for the challenges ahead. We are handing over a small, robust and dynamic institution.

Enjoy the read!

**Emeritus Professor Ari Sitas, OMS**  
**Board Chairperson**

## MESSAGE FROM THE CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER

This was an important year for the NIHSS, not just for the solid results we produced in promoting research and scholarship in the humanities and social sciences (HSS) but also because it was the final year of the term of office of an exceptional Board.

A strong relationship between management and its CEO and Board is fundamental to the success of any organisation. I have had the privilege of experiencing the most robust and supportive relationship with the Board of the NIHSS and its founding chairperson, Prof Ari Sitas, in the past eight years. As this Board's term of office comes to an end on June 2022, I am both proud and grateful of what its leadership has empowered the Institute to achieve.

Combining governance and fiduciary acumen with a tenacious commitment to transformation within the HSS, Prof Sitas and the Board have overseen unprecedented growth in research output and the number of PhD graduates in HSS fields – all the while holding the Institute to the highest standards of accountability for its financial and performance management and reporting. The consecutive unqualified audits that the Auditor-General of South Africa has awarded to the NIHSS are testimony to this.

“The Institute has successfully implemented the 2021/22 Annual Performance Plan, with almost all targets met and most of them exceeded. Between 2014/15 and 31 March 2022, the country's pool of HSS academics with doctoral degrees increased substantially, with 418 PhD graduates completing their studies on scholarships awarded by the Institute.”



### How the PhD graduate pool has grown

The Institute has successfully implemented the 2021/22 Annual Performance Plan, with almost all targets met and most of them exceeded. Between 2014/15 and 31 March 2022, the country's pool of HSS academics with doctoral degrees increased substantially, with 418 PhD graduates completing their studies on scholarships awarded by the Institute. The majority of these new graduates are black and women academics, both being categories of scholars that are under-represented in the South African public higher education system. Our contribution to the country's development goals and research and development is evident.

An estimated 70% of the graduates to date have remained in the higher education system, representing a much-needed injection of the highest-level qualifications at South African public universities – along with an infusion of scholarly work and research in long-neglected or understudied areas. Just a few examples are the approach of the criminal justice system towards intimate partner violence, challenges in rural water and sanitation, community engagement and transformation in higher education, multilingual education in South African classrooms, access to early childhood development education services for children with disabilities, and the influence of information and communication technology on social inclusion and exclusion in higher education.

The 2021/22 group of graduates stood at 95, slightly above the previous year's total of 94 and well above the target of 77 graduates for the year.

This is a very good result considering that these graduates had to complete their studies in the midst of a pandemic. On behalf of the NIHSS, I salute them for their fortitude in the face of adversity and thank the mentors of our six Doctoral Schools for their efforts to support our doctoral candidates under difficult circumstances.

### Mentors' productivity exceeded expectations

The 12 mentors, all senior academics, some of them retired, demonstrated a work ethic second to none during the year. They were working with 417 "active" PhD candidates, which meant the student: mentor ratio was approximately 34 to 1 – which is high in the doctoral environment.

Despite being slightly fewer in number than in 2020/21, when there were 13 mentors on the Doctoral Schools programme, the team outdid themselves by holding 76 regional doctoral workshops, far above the target of 16. This was also even better than the mentors' performance in the previous year, when 37 workshops were presented.

Our graduates often mention the contribution the mentors have made to their academic success, particularly in sharpening the skills needed to formulate their research proposals, obtain ethical clearance, write up their doctoral theses and finalise them for submission. The mentors, some of whom have been with our Doctoral Schools since their inception, are an indispensable part of the Institute's success in enlarging the HSS doctoral pool and ensuring that graduates have the technical and creative skills commensurate with this level of scholarship.

### Research output on the rise

Outputs from all categories of NIHSS-funded research showed outstanding growth in 2021/22, further strengthening the

contribution of HSS disciplines to South Africa's total research output.

Leaders of Catalytic Research Projects, Working Groups and Humanities Hubs reported 79 research outputs, almost double the target of 40 for the year. Books were the single biggest category of output, at 30, followed by creative outputs (25) and then journal articles (24).

Creative outputs included documentary films, art exhibitions, special editions of creative journals and digital

applications, including the augmented reality app of the Wits Origins Humanities Hub, the Liliesleaf Humanities Hub's new *Women in Struggle* virtual experience, and puppetry by Factory of the Arts/Library of Kinetic Objects, at the UWC.

One of the most poignant creative outputs of the year was the booklet featuring embroidered depictions of gender-based violence (GBV), stitched by women from the Etwatwa community in Gauteng together with Prof Puleng Segalo from UNISA. This work was one of 16 stories of feminist activism to be selected for the United Nations' 16 Days of Activism campaign against GBV in 2021.

Among the 30 books published by NIHSS-supported researchers were several that were later entered for the 2022 Humanities and Social Sciences Awards. One that went on to win an award was *History of South Africa: from 1902 to the present* by University of Pretoria historian Prof Thulasizwe Simpson, who was one of two winners in the Best Non-Fiction Monograph category of the HSS awards. His book is based on original research in unexplored archives and deals with subject matter that has not been explored in other works on South African history. The book epitomises what we mean when we talk about generating new knowledge and opening up new avenues for research.

“ Leaders of Catalytic Research Projects, Working Groups and Humanities Hubs reported 79 research outputs, almost double the target of 40 for the year. Books were the single biggest category of output, at 30, followed by creative outputs (25) and then journal articles (24). ”

### HSS Awards grow in size and stature

On the subject of the 2022 HSS Awards: Book, Creative and Digital Collection, this year's edition attracted an unprecedented number of 194 entries overall across the eight categories.

There was significant growth in entries submitted in indigenous languages – a promising sign that the NIHSS's support for literature in these languages is having an effect – and we presented the first HSS Award for work produced in an indigenous language. This was Athambile Masola's *Ilifa*, a collection of poems written in isiXhosa and sometimes switching effortlessly from isiXhosa to English and from Sesotho to isiXhosa.

Another very encouraging sign indicating the vibrancy of the HSS was the emergence of new, young voices, prompting one of the judges of the Awards to suggest that we introduce a new category specifically for young writers. That is a suggestion we shall certainly consider.

The youth are the future, not as victims of the unfinished business and crimes of their elders, but as ancestral carriers of courage, resilience, authentic freedom and the resurrection of African unity. This is a key message in the award-winning book *Lost Language of the Soul* by Mandla Langa, one of the two winners in the Best Fiction Single Author category.

Mandla's epic novel, which also portrays women as central to the liberation struggle, traces the journey of 14-year-old Joseph Mabaso, who navigates unfamiliar and often hostile territory in search of his parents, both freedom fighters who have vanished without a trace. This book is a captivating read, an education and a beacon for the ways in which the ghosts of the past can be named and put to rest. Please read it.

“Another very encouraging sign indicating the vibrancy of the HSS was the emergence of new, young voices, prompting one of the judges of the Awards to suggest that we introduce a new category specifically for young writers. That is a suggestion we shall certainly consider. The youth are the future, not as victims of the unfinished business and crimes of their elders, but as ancestral carriers of courage, resilience, authentic freedom and the resurrection of African unity.”

### Publishing partnerships grow from strength to strength

Were it not for the foresight and commitment of the book publishers with whom the NIHSS has partnered, much wonderful work might never see the light of day. In 2021/22, this partnership resulted in 30 books being published. Jacana Media was among the leaders, having published nine of our books during the year, with UKZN Press publishing four, HSRC Press two, Wits Press two and Modjaji Books one.

The partnership with UKZN Press is breaking new ground by collaborating with the Institute in publishing four books authored or co-authored by our alumni, demonstrating real depth of scholarship among these scholars and furthering the Institute's publication strategy. This strategy seeks to encourage doctoral students, postdoctoral fellows and alumni to publish work from their doctoral theses.

### Taking the HSS into the future

It has become increasingly obvious to the HSS community in recent years that HSS scholars and researchers should be an integral part of efforts to resolve societal problems that have traditionally been seen as the preserve of other sciences.

A compelling example is of course the Covid-19 pandemic experience, where “vaccine apartheid” and vaccine hesitancy combined to hamper the drive to save the lives of as many South Africans and citizens of the Global South as possible, as quickly as possible. In studies where researchers from the medical and health sciences and the HSS have put their heads together to understand vaccine hesitancy, they have concluded that the root causes are largely social (and sometimes political) in nature. The NIHSS continues to engage with national government departments and entities on matters related to the pandemic, as a member of the National Ministerial appointed National Policy Development Observatory (NPDO).

Given projections of a global upsurge in transmissible diseases, and the apparent rise of vaccine hesitancy around the world, HSS scholars and researchers will increasingly be required to collaborate with scientists from other disciplines to understand and address these issues. The HSS community will also find itself playing a growing role in studying phenomena such as changes in ecosystems, climate, technology, health and agriculture, which are expected to worsen already high levels of poverty, inequality and social injustice.

This growing role was highlighted in the March 2021 report of the Ministerial Evaluation Panel after completing its five-year review of the impact of the NIHSS. The panel noted that the HSS “has never been more critical than it has been since the Covid-19 pandemic, with its profound effect on society and exacerbation of many social, health, economic and educational inequalities”.

The report also emphasised the role of the NIHSS in supporting scholarship and research capacity-building efforts that “will help address the stark challenges that South Africa, and the rest of the continent, are likely to face in the foreseeable future”.

The Institute, as outlined in our Ten-Year Plan for April 2022 to March 2032, is ready and able to embrace these challenges. This Plan, together with an accompanying Five-Year Strategic Business Plan and risk assessment, was one of the last major tasks the outgoing Board had set itself. Its blend of thoroughness, pragmatism and imagination is further proof of the skill of this Board in setting a course that will lead the NIHSS ever closer towards fulfilling the vision of the 2011 Charter on Humanities and Social Sciences.

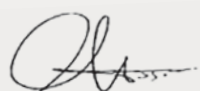
“A compelling example is of course the Covid-19 pandemic experience, where “vaccine apartheid” and vaccine hesitancy combined to hamper the drive to save the lives of as many South Africans and citizens of the Global South as possible, as quickly as possible. In studies where researchers from the medical and health sciences and the HSS have put their heads together to understand vaccine hesitancy, they have concluded that the root causes are largely social (and sometimes political) in nature.”

This message would not be complete without paying tribute to Prof Ari Sitas, one of the founding architects of the Charter and the NIHSS, and a gifted poet, storyteller, philosopher and goal-oriented policy-maker and strategist whose commitment to the HSS community and to social justice is impeccable.

To quote Prof Fred Hendricks, who paid tribute to Prof Sitas in a special address during the 2022 HSS Awards: “All of us can agree that Prof Ari’s role in establishing the Institute was pivotal ... Prof Ari has both stormed the castles and he has defined the happening, using the latter as a clarion call for the former. Just for that, Prof Ari Sitas deserves recognition and applause as a pioneer in the humanities and social sciences.”

Prof Ari, the NIHSS pledges to honour your legacy of castle storming by continuing to pursue the transformation of the HSS and growing into the expanded role that our community of scholars and researchers can play in taking on the challenges of the future.

On behalf of the NIHSS, I extend my appreciation for the support and funding of the Department of Higher Education and Training, led by the Honourable Minister, Dr Blade Nzimande. My immense gratitude is extended to the NIHSS team and family, for their dedication and always striving for excellence in everything that we set out to do. May we continue to build on our vision of a humanities and social sciences that is the epicentre of scholarship, pedagogy and social responsibility in Africa.



**Prof Sarah Mosoetsa**  
Chief Executive Officer



# SECTION B



## PROGRAMME PERFORMANCE



## STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND PERFORMANCE 2021/22

All publicly funded entities in South Africa are under considerable pressure and rightly so, to demonstrate that their work is in the public interest and that they are achieving the results expected of them. The National Institute for the Humanities and the Social Sciences (NIHSS) has been a performance-driven organisation since its inception just over eight years ago, with a solid track record in delivering on the targets set for its annual strategic objectives. Performance against each objective is stringently monitored and measured and reported on quarterly to the Board, which is rigorous in holding the management and staff of the Institute to account.

In setting strategic objectives and key performance indicators (KPIs) for the year under review, the NIHSS was greatly assisted by the final report of the Ministerial Evaluation Panel appointed by the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation two years ago to assess the impact of the Institute in its first five years. The panel's report, released in March 2021, has been invaluable in enabling the Institute to formulate its 2021/22 strategic objectives and KPIs so as to build on the strengths identified in the independent evaluation and to give focused attention to areas where greater effort is required.

- 1 Strategic objective 1** .....  
Assure a sustainable return on the investment made in the humanities and social sciences.
- 2 Strategic objective 2** .....  
Advance postgraduate scholarship through a range of innovations.
- 3 Strategic objective 3** .....  
Dynamise the fields of research and teaching in the humanities and social sciences in South Africa through a range of Catalytic Research Projects and Humanities Hubs.
- 4 Strategic objective 4** .....  
Promote the integrity, reputation and recognition of the humanities and social sciences within the higher education, science and innovation community and society at large.
- 5 Strategic objective 5** .....  
Foster international research collaborations between South Africa, Africa and countries of the Global South, including Brazil, India and China.
- 6 Strategic objective 6** .....  
Act as a dynamic knowledge broker between the worlds of knowledge and policy action on behalf of South Africa as the South African BRICS Think Tank.



# 2021/22 HIGHLIGHTS

## INDEPENDENT STRATEGIC REVIEW

The Ministerial Evaluation Panel appointed by the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation to conduct an independent five-year strategic review of the NIHSS's work and impact completed its review. Its final report with recommendations was submitted to the Minister in March 2021. The NIHSS Board and management finalised and submitted the NIHSS Ten-Year Plan to the Department of Higher Education and Training.



## DOCTORAL SCHOOLS

**50** new PhD scholarships were awarded in 2021/22, funded by the NIHSS and South African Humanities Deans' Association (SAHUDA).

As a result, there were over

**427** PhD fellows for 2021/22.

**95** PhD students graduated during the year, bringing the cumulative seven-year total to 418 graduates of the 689 scholarships awarded.

**84** of the 2021/22 graduates were South African, funded by the NIHSS-SAHUDA, while 11 were from other African countries, funded by the Council for the Development of Social Science Research in Africa (CODESRIA).

**12** NIHSS mentors hosted 76 regional and interregional doctoral workshops.

**23** publications emanated from research by doctoral fellows, postdoctoral fellows and alumni, contributing further to the HSS.

### TARGETS MET OR EXCEEDED

Of the **97%** of annual targets met, **53%** were exceeded

## POSTDOCTORAL FELLOWSHIPS

**32** new postdoctoral fellowships were awarded in 2021/22, boosting the number of fellowships to 62.

## RESEARCH OUTPUTS GENERATED



**79** research outputs were reported by research leaders and collaborators of Catalytic Research Projects, Working Groups, Humanities Hubs and Professional Associations, above the target of 40.

In addition, **21** research outputs flowed from BRICS and international collaborative research projects undertaken with NIHSS funding.

## RESEARCH PROJECTS FUNDED

**13**BRICS Cluster  
Projects  
monitored**13**existing  
international  
mobility grants  
monitored**15**new international  
mobility grants  
awarded**7**Professional  
Association  
projects  
monitored**29**new Working  
Groups funded**21**Catalytic Research  
Projects monitored**9**Humanities  
Hubs  
monitored

## ACADEMIC EVENTS SUPPORTED

## RESEARCH

**43**conferences, workshops,  
colloquiums and similar  
events organised by NIHSS-funded  
project leaders and collaborators  
of Catalytic Research Projects,  
Working Groups, Humanities  
Hubs and Professional  
Associations.**BRICS:**Project leaders and collaborators hosted  
conferences, seminars, colloquiums and  
other academic events.**17****5**dialogues, colloquiums, policy discussions, etc. were hosted/co-  
hosted and funded by the NIHSS to expand the knowledge base of  
Global South research and scholarship**12**seminars, workshops and conferences were hosted/co-  
hosted and funded by the NIHSS on behalf of the South  
African BRICS Think Tank.

## STRATEGIC PROGRAMME INTERVENTIONS

Table 1. Performance overview for the 2021/22 financial year

| Strategic Objective                                                                         | No  | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                                          | Actual 2020/21 | Annual FY Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22 | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Assure a sustainable return on the investment made in the humanities and social sciences | 1.1 | The Institute's decadal plan.                                                                                            | 0              | 1                        | 1                  | 0                 | 0                 | 1                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                            |
|                                                                                             | 1.2 | Comprehensive risk assessment and gap analysis in the context of the 2011 Charter.                                       | 0              | 1                        | 1                  | 0                 | 0                 | 1                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                            |
|                                                                                             | 1.3 | 2025 business plan and contingency measures.                                                                             | 0              | 1                        | 1                  | 0                 | 0                 | 1                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                            |
| 2. Advance postgraduate scholarship through a range of innovations                          | 2.1 | Number of new NIHSS-SAHUDA scholarships awarded.                                                                         | 50             | 50                       | 50                 | 30                | 15                | 5                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                            |
|                                                                                             | 2.2 | Number of NIHSS-funded South African doctoral students monitored by the NIHSS in the humanities and social sciences.     | 578 monitored  | 377 monitored            | 377 monitored      | -                 | 377 monitored     | -                 | 377 monitored     | 100%             | Target achieved.                                            |
|                                                                                             | 2.3 | Number of NIHSS-funded non-South African doctoral students monitored by the NIHSS in the humanities and social sciences. | 111 monitored  | 39 monitored             | 36                 | -                 | 36 monitored      | -                 | 36 monitored      | 92%              | Target not met. Three doctoral students were not monitored. |

| Strategic Objective | No  | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                                                                                                  | Actual 2020/21 | Annual FY Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22                      | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                             |
|---------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     | 2.4 | Throughput rate on total funded SAHUDA PhDs (578) by March 2022.                                                                                                                 | 251 graduated  | 67 (318, 55% cumulative) | 84 PhDs graduated (335, 57% cumulative) | 21 PhDs graduated | 23 PhDs graduated | 31 PhDs graduated | 9 PhDs graduated  | 105%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                     | 2.5 | Throughput rate on total funded CODESRIA PhDs (111) by March 2022.                                                                                                               | 72 graduated   | 10 (61, 55% cumulative)  | 11 PhDs graduated (83, 74% cumulative)  | 5 PhDs graduated  | 2 PhDs graduated  | 3 PhDs graduated  | 1 PhD graduated   | 136%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                     | 2.6 | The number of new NIHSS-funded South African post-doctoral research fellows awarded in the humanities and social sciences.                                                       | 30             | 30                       | 32                                      | -                 | -                 | -                 | 32                | 107%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                     | 2.7 | Number of NIHSS-funded South African post-doctoral research fellows monitored by the NIHSS in the humanities and social sciences.                                                | 33             | 30                       | 30                                      | -                 | 10                | -                 | 20                | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                     | 2.8 | Number of mentors appointed by the NIHSS to support Doctoral Schools and ultimately enhance the creativity and technical capacities of NIHSS doctoral students.                  | 13             | 12                       | 12                                      | 12                | -                 | -                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                     | 2.9 | The number of regional doctoral workshops co-hosted by mentors through the NIHSS Doctoral Schools to enhance the creativity and technical capacities of NIHSS doctoral students. | 37             | 16                       | 76                                      | 9                 | 21                | 28                | 18                | 475%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |

## STRATEGIC PROGRAMME INTERVENTIONS

Table 1. Performance overview for the 2021/22 financial year

| Strategic Objective                                                                                                                                             | No   | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                                                             | Actual 2020/21 | Annual Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22 | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                 | 2.10 | NIHSS-hosted Annual National Doctoral and HSS Alumni conferences as an innovation to advance postgraduate scholarship.                      | 2              | 2                     | 2                  | -                 | -                 | 2                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | 2.11 | The number of doctoral fellows, postdoctoral fellows and alumni contributing further to the HSS.                                            | 20             | 15                    | 23                 | 2                 | 10                | 4                 | 7                 | 153%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
| 3. Dynamise the fields of research and teaching in the humanities and social sciences in South Africa through a range of catalytic Projects And Humanities Hubs | 3.1  | NIHSS Catalytic Research Projects monitored.                                                                                                | 8              | 20 monitored          | 21 monitored       | 8 monitored       | 2 monitored       | 11 monitored      | -                 | 105%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | 3.2  | NIHSS Humanities Hubs monitored.                                                                                                            | 8              | 5 monitored           | 9 monitored        | 2 monitored       | 2 monitored       | 2 monitored       | 3 monitored       | 180%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | 3.3  | The number of HSS research outputs produced by the project leaders and collaborators of/in Catalytic Research Projects and Humanities Hubs. | 46             | 40                    | 79                 | 12                | 14                | 27                | 26                | 198%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | 3.4  | Number of conferences, workshops, colloquiums and similar academic events organised by NIHSS-funded projects leaders and collaborators.     | 21             | 10                    | 43                 | 9                 | 18                | 2                 | 14                | 430%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |

| Strategic Objective                                                                                                                                                                     | No  | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                                                                  | Actual 2020/21 | Annual FY Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22 | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Uphold the integrity, reputation and recognition of the humanities and social sciences within the higher education community, science and innovation community and society at large. | 4.1 | The number of new Working Groups funded by the NIHSS.                                                                                            | 29             | 15                       | 29                 | 3                 | 15                | 8                 | 3                 | 193%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                         | 4.2 | The number of Working Groups monitored by the NIHSS.                                                                                             | New indicator  | 15 monitored             | 45 monitored       | 19 monitored      | 5 monitored       | 2 monitored       | 19 monitored      | 300%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                         | 4.3 | The number of Professional Associations monitored by the NIHSS.                                                                                  | 6              | 6 monitored              | 7 monitored        | -                 | 6 monitored       | 1 monitored       | -                 | 117%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                         | 4.4 | The number of NIHSS annual awards ceremonies held to recognise the contribution of individuals within the higher education community to the HSS. | 1              | 1                        | 1                  | -                 | -                 | -                 | 1                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |

## STRATEGIC PROGRAMME INTERVENTIONS

Table 1. Performance overview for the 2021/22 financial year

| Strategic Objective                                                                                                                               | No  | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                                                                                                           | Actual 2020/21 | Annual FY Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22 | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Foster international research collaborations between South Africa, Africa and countries of the Global South, including Brazil, India and China | 5.1 | The number of international collaborative research projects to promote the principle of norm-driven internationalization and collaboration of institutions in the Global South.           | 5              | 5                        | 5                  | -                 | -                 | 5                 | -                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                   | 5.2 | The number of International mobility grants monitored (APP and BRICS) to promote the principle of norm-driven internationalisation and collaboration of institutions in the Global South. | 13             | 15 monitored             | 15 monitored       | -                 | 7 monitored       | 1 monitored       | 7 monitored       | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                   | 5.3 | The number of dialogues, colloquiums, policy discussions etc. hosted/co-hosted and funded by the NIHSS to expand the knowledge base of Global South research and scholarship.             | 4              | 5                        | 5                  | -                 | 0                 | 2                 | 3                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                   | 5.4 | The number of research outputs produced by the international collaborative project leaders.                                                                                               | 13             | 5                        | 21                 | -                 | 12                | 4                 | 5                 | 420%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |

| Strategic Objective                                                                                                                          | No  | Key Performance Indicator (KPI)                                                                | Actual 2020/21 | Annual FY Target 2021/22 | Actual YTD 2021/22 | Actual Q1 2021/22 | Actual Q2 2021/22 | Actual Q3 2021/22 | Actual Q4 2021/22 | Actual % 2021/22 | COMMENT                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. Act as a dynamic broker between the worlds of knowledge and policy action on behalf of South Africa as the South African BRICS Think Tank | 6.1 | Number of BRICS Cluster Projects monitored.                                                    | 10             | 9 monitored              | 13 monitored       | 2 monitored       | 3 monitored       | 5 monitored       | 3 monitored       | 144%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                              | 6.2 | Number of seminars, workshops and conferences hosted/co-hosted and funded by the NIHSS.        | 9              | 9                        | 12                 | 3                 | 4                 | 2                 | 3                 | 133%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |
|                                                                                                                                              | 6.3 | Number of SABTT steering committee meetings (NIHSS, DHET).                                     | 4              | 4                        | 4                  | -                 | 2                 | 1                 | 1                 | 100%             | Target achieved.                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                              | 6.4 | Number of South African BRICS Think Tank Forums (pre-academic forum, Academic Forum and BTTC). | 4              | 3                        | 6                  | -                 | 5                 | 0                 | 1                 | 200%             | Target achieved and exceeded, without adverse effect on the budget. |



# STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 1

ENSURE A SUSTAINABLE RETURN  
ON THE INVESTMENT MADE IN THE  
HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES



Exclusive portrait of Nokutela Ndim Dube by Snalo Ngcaba, published by legacy creates (Pty) Ltd as an NIHSS Working Group output

From its inception, the NIHSS has aspired to be a durable organisation; not an institution merely working from year to year – or “hand to mouth”, so to speak – but one with a line of sight into the medium- and longer-term future. This is a necessity if the NIHSS is to have the sustainable impact it is expected to have on the humanities and social sciences (HSS).

The Institute’s success in moving across and through multiple timeframes will depend on how effectively it plans and, arguably more challenging, executes those plans. Both the Board and management are acutely aware that “even the best-laid plans of mice and men often go awry” but, from a more African outlook, the NIHSS has the advantage of being in the company of many who wish to see it succeed: “If you want to walk far, walk with others.”

“Walking with others” is what the Institute has always done and will continue to do. All four of the strategy and planning documents developed and approved during 2021-22 have

their roots in the 2011 Charter for the HSS, itself created from one of the most comprehensive and stakeholder-inclusive processes undertaken in the South African academic and research community.

And all four of these documents take cognisance of the needs, interests and expectations of the NIHSS’s primary stakeholders. (Refer to page 102 for details of these stakeholders.) These documents, all of which were deliverables for strategic objective one in 2021/22, were the Institute’s 10-Year Plan, 10-year risk assessment, Five-Year Strategic Business Plan and Annual Performance Plan for 2022-23.

### PLANNING FOR THE NEXT 10 YEARS

Looking forward 10 years hence, the Institute crafted its decadal plan for the period 1 April 2022 to 31 March 2032. In doing so, it drew on the HSS Charter, the March 2021 report of the Ministerial Evaluation Panel of the work and impact of the first



Members of the NIHSS Board and management discuss the five-year review report and the 10-Year Plan

five years of the NIHSS and various policy frameworks and other imperatives of the Department of Higher Education, Science and Innovation. Among them were the 2019 White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation and the September 2020 Review Report of South Africa's Higher Education, Science, Technology and Innovation Institutional Landscape (HESTIL).

The 10-Year Plan envisages the continuation and expansion of the various programmes that the Institute commenced in 2015, including the Scholarships programme, Humanities Hubs and Catalytic Research Projects. By way of example, the HSS community has identified a need to broaden the Scholarships programme to include master's and doctoral students and not only the latter.

Similarly, the African Pathways Programme is to be broadened, allowing for a more extensive focus on scholarly engagement with other African countries and there will be an expansion of the Institute's International, BRICS and Global South (IBGS) programme, with three BRICS Research Institutes to be established at South African public universities under the auspices of the NIHSS.

This in turn reflects the dynamic shifts occurring in the state and society, as well as in interstate engagements and relations regionally and globally, calling for strategic academic and research partnerships in generating ideas, discoveries, innovation, technological development and engines for propelling development.

Further, the 10-Year Plan prioritises 10 overarching themes for all the NIHSS's programmes. These themes are Agriculture, Rural Livelihoods and Development; Arts, Performance and Sources of Creativity; Digital Humanities; Ecosystems, Climate and Technology; Global Economy, Development Challenges and Socio-Economic Alternatives; Higher Education, Teaching, Research and Innovation; Indigenous Languages; Pandemics, Medicine, Disease and Curing; Precolonial, Colonial and Postcolonial Histories; and Transformation, Race, Culture, Gender and Identity

#### 10-YEAR RISK ASSESSMENT CONDUCTED

In tandem with the development of the decadal plan, the NIHSS conducted a 10-year risk assessment, identifying possible sources of losses and threats to the implementation of the 10-Year Plan and setting out ways to mitigate these.

Through the assessment, the Institute identified a total of 29 risks, the critical and major ones dealing with funding and long-term financial sustainability, Covid-19 and other related pandemics, data integrity and security, IT infrastructure and political instability in South Africa, the Southern African Development Community, the broad African continent and the BRICS.

All these risks have been consolidated into a 10-year risk management report and included in the NIHSS's Risk Register, together with descriptions of existing controls, actions to improve the management of each risk, the action owner and the time scale for the actions.

The NIHSS Board approved both the 10-Year Plan and the 10-year risk management report in November 2021, together with the two other key deliverables for strategic objective one for the 2021-22 year. These were the Institute's five-year Strategic Business Plan and Annual Performance Plan.

### FIVE-YEAR STRATEGIC PLAN AND ANNUAL PERFORMANCE PLAN

The NIHSS enters a new five-year business cycle that starts on 1 April 2022 and runs until 31 March 2027. In the coming five-year cycle, the intention is to build on the Institute's successes in the first eight years of its existence, so as to continually enhance its performance, strategic impact, operational efficiency and sustainability.

*"The child of January 2012 will enter the university gate of 2030 to study Aeronautical Engineering, confident that she is not driftwood and that her clans come from a long way back. She will be bilingual and her mother tongue and her English will be interchangeably strong – she can write and she can talk and, if need be, compose poems on periodic tables.*

*There at the university of 2030 she will be exposed to a deeper understanding of diversity and to the experience that Others from both far and near are wonder-full in their own ways. She will come to meet quite a number of them; if she needs a semester to study the poetry of Aimé Césaire in the original because her Caribbean high school teacher inspired her to do so, she might take a semester off to study in Dakar or Cairo or Paris.*

*If she wants to strengthen her quantum physics, there will be Hyderabad, Beijing or Stanford. If she wants to take a breather from complicated equations about the stress modulus in variegated metals, she could do an elective on VhaVenda art or the Nando Song Cycles of the ironsmiths of the past.*

*She will be an engineer, but the humanities and the social sciences will have played their bit part in the making of a good and educated engineer. And she will look back and wonder about the dark times and the times of confusion that her parents speak about and hopefully she will stop with a smile at the thought of that interregnum year of her birth and perchance this Charter is on some shelf gathering dust and it so happens that she pages through it, we hope that she does so in amazement: such a plain, obvious and trivial piece of text. Our work will have been done."*

**Preamble, Charter for Humanities and Social Sciences, 2011**

Both documents place strong emphasis on further entrenching the key strengths that the independent review panel noted in its March 2021 report on the first five years of the NIHSS while addressing the areas identified for expansion and improvement.

For example, the expansion of the Scholarship programme to include master's and doctoral candidates has implications for the way the NIHSS sources and uses funding. Apart from the need for more funding for scholarships, it will be necessary to provide support and mentorship to a larger pool of candidates on different levels of postgraduate study. The Strategic Business Plan 2022 to 2027 addresses the operational and funding mechanisms that will make this possible.



# STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 2



ADVANCE POSTGRADUATE  
SCHOLARSHIP THROUGH A  
RANGE OF INNOVATIONS





The NIHSS celebrates. To date, 418 doctoral fellows have graduated.

Of these, 628 (85%) were awarded to South African students through the partnership between the Institute and the South African Humanities Deans' Association (SAHUDA), while 111 (15%) were awarded to non-South African PhD candidates in collaboration with the Council for the Development of Social Science Research in Africa (CODESRIA).

As at 31 March 2022, a cumulative total of 418 PhD students had graduated, comprising 335 (80%) NIHSS-SAHUDA graduates and 83 (20%) NIHSS-CODESRIA graduates. This included the 84 SAHUDA students who graduated during 2021/22, significantly above the target of 67 graduates for the year and the 11 CODESRIA graduates, which was slightly higher than the target of 10.

Fifty new NIHSS-SAHUDA scholarships were awarded during the year under review. The Institute monitors the progress of these students through their mid-year and annual progress reports, as well as through engagement with their Doctoral Schools mentors.

### ADVANCE POSTGRADUATE SCHOLARSHIP THROUGH A RANGE OF INNOVATIONS

Through the flagship Doctoral Schools programme, which mainly targets the under-represented categories of black and female academics and involves a joint effort with South Africa's public universities, the Institute has made a significant contribution to expanding South Africa's pool of doctoral graduates with critical thinking skills, proficiency in conducting research and the ability to contribute to innovation in their fields.

The NIHSS began awarding doctoral scholarships in 2014/15 and, by 31 March 2022, had awarded a total of 739 scholarships.

### MENTORS EXCEED NUMBER OF PLANNED WORKSHOPS

Funding for PhD studies is an important part of the contribution the NIHSS makes to doctoral candidates but, hand in hand with that is the high-quality academic mentoring they receive and the emphasis placed on building a supportive community, comprising current PhD students, alumni and senior academics. This level of support, which includes regional doctoral workshops and the Annual National Doctoral Conference, has been credited with the relatively good throughput and low drop-out rates of NIHSS-supported PhD students.



**Professor Nhlanhla Maake, the NIHSS's longest-serving mentor**

The NIHSS continued to support doctoral fellows through the doctoral mentorship programme to build the capacity of PhD students in their research and academic writing processes. This support is organised around Doctoral Schools in six regions, namely the Eastern Cape; Gauteng; KwaZulu-Natal; Northern Corridor; UNISA/Free State and North West; and the Western Cape.

The 12 mentors appointed to assist the Institute's students were required to hold 16 regional doctoral workshops in 2021/22; their actual achievement was 76 workshops.

The regional doctoral workshops were opportunities for students to enhance their high-level academic skills and to share experiences and strategies for managing academic life. Workshop topics included thesis writing, ethical considerations, research methodology, dealing with assessors' comments and consolidating chapters for final submission, among others.

**Table 2: Doctoral Schools mentors for 2021/22**

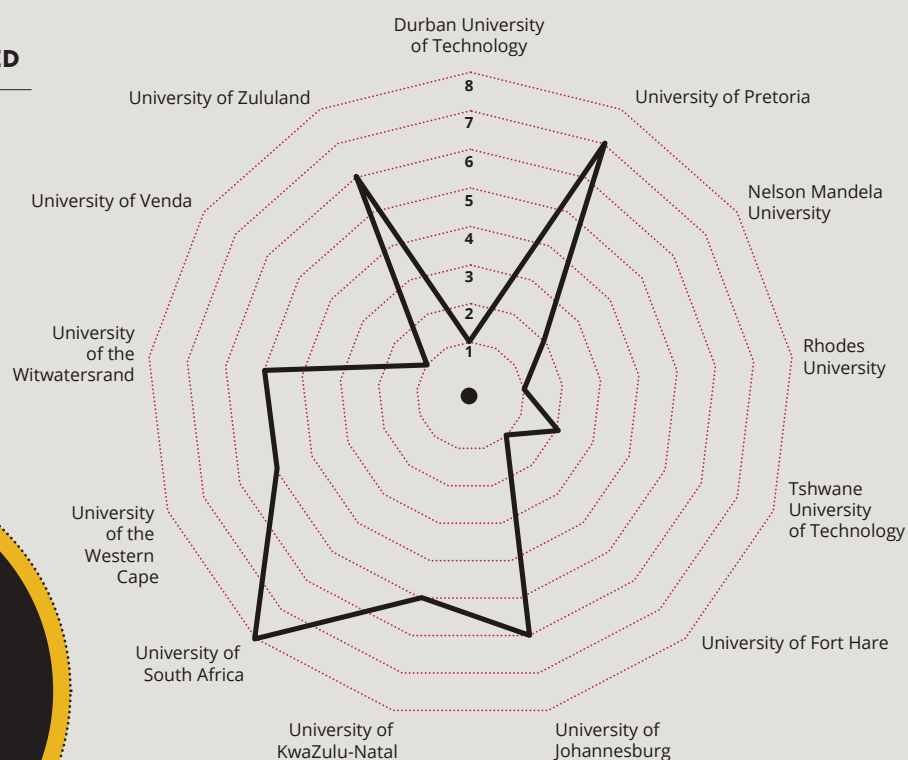
| Mentor                   | University                      | Region                                                             |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Prof Theodore Petrus     | University of the Free State    | UNISA/ Free State and North West                                   |
| Prof Ingrid Palmay       | University of Johannesburg      | Gauteng                                                            |
| Prof Tholene Sodi        | University of Limpopo           | Northern Corridor                                                  |
| Prof Peace Kiguwa        | University of the Witwatersrand | Gauteng                                                            |
| Prof Kishore Raga        | Nelson Mandela University       | Eastern Cape                                                       |
| Prof Jessica Murray      | University of South Africa      | UNISA/ Free State and North West                                   |
| Prof Allucia Shokane     | University of KwaZulu-Natal     | KwaZulu-Natal                                                      |
| Prof Johannes Smit       | University of KwaZulu-Natal     | KwaZulu-Natal                                                      |
| Prof Diana Gibson        | University of the Western Cape  | Western Cape                                                       |
| Prof Florette Boonzaier  | University of Cape Town         | Western Cape                                                       |
| Prof Frederick Hendricks | Roving mentor                   | Eastern Cape, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal                       |
| Prof Nhlanhla Maake      | Roving mentor                   | Gauteng and Northern Corridor and UNISA/ Free State and North West |

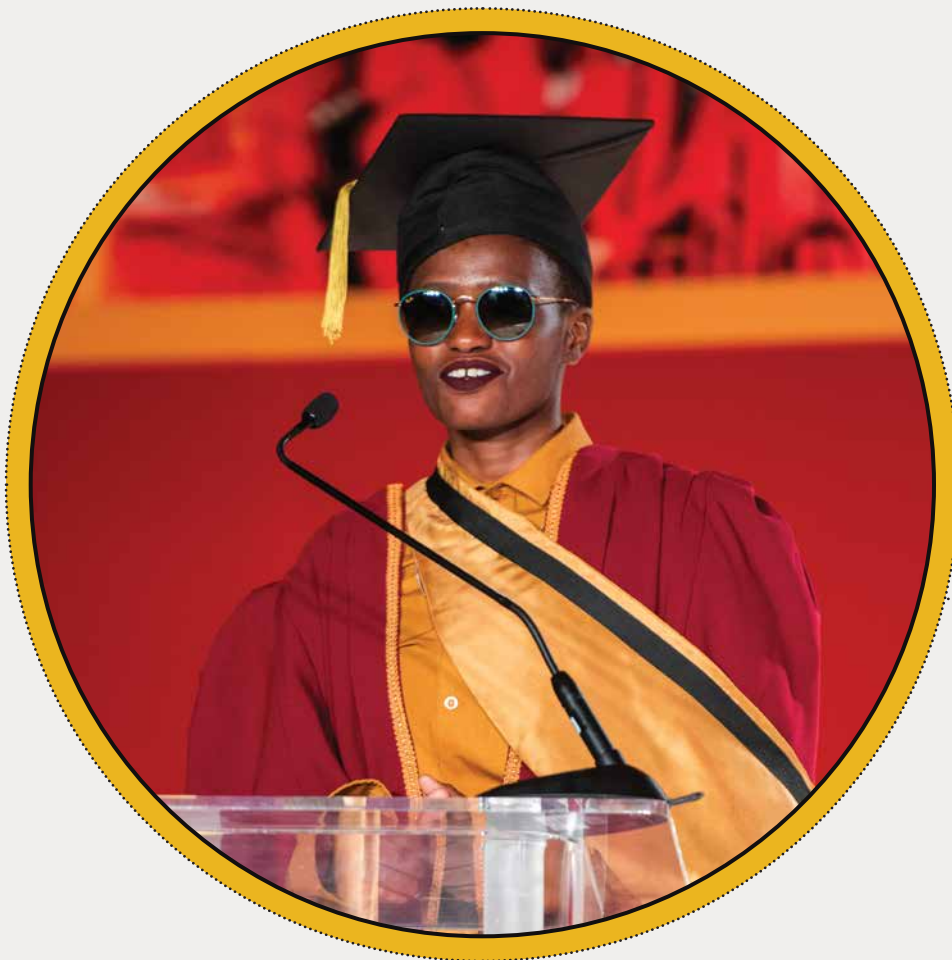


### NEW NIHSS-SAHUDA SCHOLARSHIPS AWARDED

**50**

new PhD scholarships were awarded during 2021/22. The recipients will study at 13 different public universities, as shown in the graphic to the right. Altogether, **88%** of these students are black and **62%** are female.





Dr Sisanda Mseleke wrote her doctoral thesis on the topic of “The Blind Glaze - A critical examination of disability and queer sexuality in South Africa” and graduated from the University of the Witwatersrand.

## GRADUATES SHARE THEIR PHD EXPERIENCES

Odysseus and shipwrecks, isolation and community, braille and kindness, prayers and miracles ... these are some of the metaphors and memories that four graduates carry with them after completing their PhDs through the Institute's Doctoral Schools programme. What follows are extracts from the talks these four graduates, Dr Lukhanyo Makhenyane, Dr Zainab Kader, Dr Refilwe Lepere and Dr Sisanda Mseleke, gave about their PhD experiences at the Annual National Doctoral Conference (ANDC) from 2 to 4 November 2021.

### Reaching out and receiving kindness and a copy of the programme in braille

“Learning to move through the world as a blind person was extremely challenging. I kept remembering where I come from, a small village and then thinking that if I give up now, what is my hope?

I remember applying for my PhD and thinking, ‘That’s stupid, but do it anyway.’ Anyway, I applied for funding and when I was accepted, I could not believe this was really happening.

Having to navigate a PhD with a disability has to be one of the [most challenging] things I have ever had to do but I have

been so privileged that NIHSS funded me. I remember how shocked I was when the first allowance came through. I ran to the dean’s office and said this must be a mistake, there’s this money that’s been deposited into my account. They said, ‘That’s for you’ and I thought, what if someone comes to get me after using it, I can’t afford that?

I want to highlight the importance of having someone believe in you and your dreams and always being there to back you up and I think financial backup is what we all need, as a black person and as a black woman in this country. That boost can make your life and I felt so privileged that I was one of those who were funded by this big institution, the NIHSS. I felt so privileged.

I don’t remember reaching out and not being met with kindness by NIHSS. I remember the first conference I attended in my first year. I gave Prof Sarah Mosoetsa (CEO of the Institute) such a difficult time when I said, So how do you expect me to follow the programme? The following year she delivered it to me in a braille format.

This is an institution that is willing to learn and sometimes you need those little acts to feel like you are a part of society to feel included and part of the bigger picture.”



Dr Zainab Kader wrote her doctoral thesis on the topic of “An intervention to reduce adolescent hookah pipe use and satisfy their basic psychological needs” and graduated from the University of the Western Cape.

### **A miracle, a prayer and a dream of alleviating substance abuse**

“My PhD journey started rather spontaneously. I went for coffee one day with my master’s supervisor and she said, Why don’t you do a PhD?”

I didn’t know where the finance was going to come from or the support. That year, I went on a spiritual journey to Mecca and I prayed. When I got back I saw this advert and thought, ‘No, not me, why would my study be worthy of this amazing scholarship when there are so many other people out there doing fascinating work in different fields?’

I applied and was successful. I was really proud. The NIHSS was a real miracle and prayer come true.

I want to contribute to alleviating substance abuse in our communities by intervening at the level of the family and the child and the school. Thanks to the NIHSS, I was able to engage in conversations that aim to alleviate substance abuse and to travel internationally to gain more understanding of intervention mapping so that I can come back and design interventions that can be used in our communities.

Another opportunity that I received from the NIHSS, which was really remarkable, was speaking to my peers at the time about the emotional journey of being a PhD student. Everybody speaks about the academic challenges but we speak very little about the emotional impact, the anxiety, the depression, the isolation, the loneliness and a host of other things. One day you are on a high because your article was accepted and tomorrow you are feeling despair because you don’t know how to analyse this data or it’s not going according to plan, so naturally it will affect our mental health.

Well, today as we are celebrating our achievement, I want all of you to know that you’ve done your very best and achieved something to be very proud of. When someone calls you doctor, in the beginning we feel shy and do not know how to respond. I say own it when someone calls you Dr because you deserve it. You are among the 2% in this world with a PhD and that’s a huge achievement.”



Dr Refiloe Lepere wrote her doctoral thesis on the topic of “Performing invisible labour. A performance inquiry into the paradox of invisibility/visibility as experienced by domestic workers in South Africa” and graduated from the University of the Witwatersrand.

#### ‘What is your theoretical framework, Refiloe?’

“Many of us will tell you that when we have gone on a writing retreat, Professor [Siphamandla] Zondi always asks the question: ‘What is your theoretical framework?’

You think you have done writing for the night and you hear, ‘Refiloe, what did you write? What is your theoretical framework?’ And you don’t know what your theoretical framework is because it is 23:00 or it’s 15:00 the next afternoon and you are trying to talk about why you are doing this PhD and they ask, ‘What is your theoretical framework?’

Part of what I’ve learned about the theoretical framework experience is that NIHSS has given us a space to create worlds. The world of theatre is about creating worlds – dimensions, characters, relationships, environments, scripting words and giving people words to say; it is about directing light, it is about directing sound and costuming ... and what the NIHSS has given us as black people, as graduates, is this place of creating wealth.

South African novelist Bessie Head wrote this wonderful and enduring book of short stories titled *A Collector of Treasures*. In the collection she attempts to focus on the community at large of Serowe (in Botswana), the village of Serowe, in a period where she was trying to find herself in isolation, but as much as she wanted to be in isolation she had to be socially oriented in the community.

She puts women in leading roles in her stories; she takes the side of African society and she becomes part of the microcosm of a village. I think it’s important that I use this concept of what Bessie does in the village as what NIHSS does for us is focus on our status as African people. It inserts itself and becomes part of our society at large and most important it plays a leading role in each of our stories and makes us become world makers of our own lives.

We are in the middle of a pandemic and the world is falling apart and things have been horrible but somehow, in the mist of that, we have been given an opportunity to reimagine what the world could be. I am not imagining that we are the first ones ever to think about changing the world or even feel the urgency of changing the world is an emergency. But I feel like part of what they [the NIHSS] have done with this world making is an insistence of a paradigm shift. It’s an insistence that we can.

Are we the change we wish to see? Are we the change we want to hold dear? As we move forward with humility and in the spirit of learning, I am certain of one thing: that we must not be afraid of seismic shifts and of thinking and being a new paradigm. A new world making is dawning and I am really grateful for all the time and the space and the place to become a world maker.”



Dr Lukhanyo Makhenyane wrote his doctoral thesis on the topic of “Uthelekiso lwelizwi lembongi kwisihobe sikaZolani Mkiva no Mzwakhe Mbuli” and graduated from the University of Fort Hare. He wrote his PhD in IsiXhosa.

O

### If Odysseus had had support like this, he might have made it home much sooner

“Although some scholars have a strong argument against using the journey metaphor for a PhD story, it is a fitting metaphor for my own experience. Allow me to further [compare] my journey metaphor to Odysseus’s 10-year journey back home.

After years of fighting the undergraduate, honours and master’s Trojan war, I found myself on a five-year journey home to my dreams. Yes, I too wandered on the Mediterranean sea of journal articles, MA destinations, doctoral theses and its coastal lands of newspapers articles, audio, videotapes and books, as mine was secondary research.

Yes, there were times it felt like I was drowning, and it would be best to let go and just give in. It was becoming too much for me. Yes I watched [dawn] break a few times in the freezing cold of winter and it became too much to continue. Odysseus did not give in and neither did I.

Odysseus took 10 years to reach his homeland after spending 10 years in the Trojan war. I believe if he had had a roving mentor like Prof Fred Hendricks, a mentor like Prof Botha and Prof Kishore Raga to keep teaching the ins and outs of being

PhD students with a fine-tooth comb, he would have made it home in time. And they sure did bring that fine-tooth comb to make sure that you iron out everything that was not going according to plan.

If only Odysseus had had NIHSS and SAHUDA financial muscle like I did, he would have been home in good time. I cannot thank the NIHSS enough for their support. While many others were shipwrecked by their studies and finances and did not make it, we did not have such complaints because each and every year, right on time, it was those beeps notifying us that something has made some renovations on your bank account.

My fellow doctors, the journey continues. We cannot afford to be invisible heroes when new knowledge is needed to solve the country’s problems.

As Mqhayi (South African poet and novelist SEK Mqhayi) would put it:

Godukani Zizwe Liphelile ityala  
 Godukani Zizwe iphelile into ibithethwa  
 Godukani ningalali ilizwe liyazuza  
 Godukani ningalali ilizwe lisengozini  
 Godukani ningalali ilizwe lisengozini  
 Godukani ningalali eyona mfazwe mna ndithi ifikile”



Dr Yaliwe Selebogo, opening the 2021 Annual National Doctoral Conference



## 125 PAPERS PRESENTED AT 2021 ANNUAL NATIONAL DOCTORAL CONFERENCE

The Annual National Doctoral Conference (ANDC) brings the Institute's doctoral students together to enhance their research skills, receive intellectual support and engage in collaborative networking. It is an outstanding opportunity for scholarship students to present their research to their peers, mentors and members of NIHSS partners such as SAHUDA, to have their work critiqued in a constructive and supportive setting and to be recognised for excellence through the ANDC best paper awards.

Against the backdrop of ongoing Covid-19 restrictions on gatherings, the Institute convened the ANDC in a hybrid format on 2 to 4 November 2021.

### THE FOUR BEST PAPERS FROM THE ANDC

Of the 125 papers that PhD candidates presented at the 2021 ANDC, four were selected as the best papers at the conference. Sandisiwe Mapine, Mbuyisi Mgibisa and Kgomotso Moshugi are from Wits University, while Lancelord Siphamandla Ncube is with the University of Cape Town.

*Highlights from some of the award-winning papers follow.*

### How socio-political shifts have influenced black celebrities' autobiographies

The world has been experiencing a "memoir boom" since the turn of the century and black South African celebrities have been part of that phenomenon. What has changed about the writing of black autobiographers since the early days, however, is that it is no longer predominantly socio-political.

Before 1994, regardless of gender, black South African autobiographers engaged primarily to counter hegemonic definitions of identity and social roles imposed under apartheid, says PhD candidate Sandisiwe Mapine, in her award-winning paper presented at the ANDC in November 2021.

That is no longer the case.

"They are writing at a point when the socio-political landscape allows them to focus on themselves," says Sandisiwe, using the examples of kwaito performer Kabelo Mabalane, actress Ayanda Borothe and actress and activist Rosie Motene.

"They are not, on a political level, compelled to 'occupy subject-positions imposed on them by dominant discourses and social institutions' or spend their time challenging these impositions," she says, quoting Ngwenya's characterisation of pre-1994 memoirs.

One of the main points Sandisiwe makes in her paper, titled “From Pantsula to Pastor: The Conversion of Kabelo Mabalane”, is that autobiography enables celebrities to use narratives to craft their identities and life stories.

In the case of Mabalane and his 2015 autobiography *I Ran for my Life*, the book appears to be a “conversion narrative” – a subgenre that presents public figures with opportunities for “reputation makeovers”.

“In the world of celebrities, reputation is everything. In a relatively small entertainment industry, the competition is tough and the stakes are high. Celebrities with ‘solid’ reputations and solid brands can earn themselves mileage in the form of recognition, jobs and endorsements,” says Sandisiwe, adding that there are exceptions to the rule, where it pays to be “nasty” and “deceitful”.

However, while it is not crucial for celebrities to be liked, some actions, utterances and associations can be “career limiting”. Currently, public figures accused of violent acts against women are likely to lose some social standing and be exposed to “cancel culture”, where they may be shamed on social media and face fan boycotts.

While Sandisiwe emphasises she is not saying Mabalane was scared of being cancelled, he has been implicated in some of the controversies associated with kwaito. Hence, he uses the conversation narrative in *I Ran for my Life* to frame his “descent into darkness” as a mistake and a crisis, demonstrating atonement, humility and remorse.

“His conversion is physical and spiritual,” says Sandisiwe. “After drug rehabilitation, Mabalane makes spiritual and physical changes around which a new identity can be formed.” He takes up running, which leads him to complete the 90.2km Comrades Marathon. Much of the rest of the book is then dedicated to the topic of running, motivational tips, training and nutritional advice for runners.

“The public and the media have embraced the new Mabalane and he is no longer at risk of being cancelled,” she says. “He makes headlines for positive reasons...”

Her conclusion is that it is clear black South African celebrities can find redemption, expression and healing through autobiography.

“Mabalane ran for his life and took his readers with him on his incredible autobiographical journey of conversion.”

### **Biko’s ‘envisioned self’ as an alternative to the concept of ‘coloniality of being’**

In a well-considered and much-needed contribution to the theoretical framework of decoloniality, PhD candidate Mbuyisi Mgibisa argues for Steve Biko’s “envisioned self” as an alternative to the concept of “coloniality of being” posited by scholars such as Maldonado-Torres.

His paper, titled “Re-imagining the coloniality of being through Biko’s concept of ‘envisioned self’”, critiques Maldonado-Torres’ concept of the coloniality of being by drawing on the ideas and insights offered by Biko’s black consciousness and Africana philosophy.

“I posit here that there is a temptation to think of black people in colonial terms or to think of them as ‘beings’ external to themselves and as selves lacking inner life. I argue that such meditations on black beings are limited because of their focus on the point of view of those who colonised rather than on the colonised,” Mbuyisi says.

“It reflects the general history of the discourse of colonialism whereby the being is presumed inherently and intrinsically colonial and thus cannot articulate its conditions from its point of view. Because most Africans were colonised, the impact of colonialism on the black people is such that ‘its interrogation is an ineluctable feature of their thought’ (Lewis Gordon, 2008). It is contended here that Africana philosophy and black consciousness philosophy bring much of the questions of being to the fore in terms of the point of view of the colonised.”

Mbuyisi points that his paper has privileged insights from Biko’s 1978 work, *I Write What I Like*. This is a work that is not fundamentally indebted to coloniality, having emerged out of the black world, out of the Global South.

Thus, in critiquing modes of thought that enable one to be born as coloniality, instead of as a human beings, his paper makes way for an alternative understanding of coloniality. It is “understood as something human being are forced toward instead of actually *being*”, says Mbuyisi.

He draws on WEB du Bois' gift of double consciousness, which has been further developed and reconceptualised by Paget Henry and other scholars, as "potentiated double consciousness".

Mbuyisi goes on to say that his paper has "twinning" Biko's black consciousness and Du Boisian potentiated double consciousness to offer a reading of Biko's concept of envisioned self.

"What emerges is Biko's gift to the world. Our task is not only to show that a gift has been both given and received at the same time as actively being unrecognised and unrealised, but to affirm the possibility of black and colonised intellectuals as the sources of such offering," he says, quoting Jane Anna Gordon's 2007 work.

Referring to his paper as fundamentally a work of theory, Mbuyisi, who is part of the Department of Media Studies at the University of the Witwatersrand, is practising what he believes all emerging black scholars in the humanities and social sciences should undertake – the development of theory.

### **The impact of ICT on inclusion and exclusion in uptake of OERs**

The advent of open educational resources (OERs) has been widely hailed as a significant step forward for social inclusivity and free access to openly licensed educational materials for both academics and students.

Yet there are certain barriers that may impede the uptake of OERs, particularly in developing countries where there are existing inequalities, says Lancelord Siphamandla Mncube, PhD candidate at the University of Cape Town's Department of Information Systems.

In the educational sphere, a key enabler in the adoption and development of OERs is information and communications technology (ICT).

"ICT has been documented as playing a role in a higher education institution for different reasons," he says. "A vast amount of literature seems to be more concerned with contributing only to positive aspects regarding the use of ICT for tuition and research. Currently, ICT is known to contribute to the adoption of OERs in higher education institutions, including those that are primarily open distance e-learning (ODEL) in nature. Both social inclusion and exclusion are established

factors in the higher education domain, particularly in terms of the appropriation of OER."

Therefore, his study sought to identify factors contributing to both the social inclusion and social exclusion caused by the use of ICT. The findings show that ICT has positive and negative impacts on inclusion and exclusion during the adoption and development (known as "appropriation") of OERs.

"Some of the findings postulate that the innovation that is enabled through ICT tends to favour a select minority of rich people," says Lancelord in his ANDC paper. "For many students, ICT continues to perpetuate social exclusion. The inventing wheel of ICT innovation, including OER, has not yet come fully to support societal needs. Instead, it continues to promote the agendas of the Global North."

Lancelord's study was based on qualitative research among students and academics at UNISA, an ODeL institution that relies on ICT and OERs to support its research and tuition in the e-learning environment.

The affordability of ICT was noted as being the main factor impeding OER appropriation, along with the availability of ICT infrastructure and network coverage. "To fast track the appropriation of OER, UNISA and the South African government should collaborate with such internet service providers as Telkom, Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and others to ensure that at least all South Africans have access to fibre optics to facilitate network coverage," Lancelord says.

"Once such a network has been rolled out, it could be extended to the population-intense rural areas ... Such extension of ICT services must occur as a matter of priority because the statistics show that UNISA's student enrolment is a third of the South African student population, with the majority being poor students who reside in the township and rural areas."

In addition, the ODeL sector should revisit its policies and procedures to allow OER sharing across the sector and the continent, he recommends. "UNISA, as the topmost open institution in Africa, including South Africa, must drive the mandate of making knowledge openly accessible to all through enabling access to its tuition and research resources."



Professor Mogomme Masoga, Executive Dean of Humanities, University of Zululand gave the keynote Address at the Annual HSS Alumni Conference

## DOCTORAL STUDIES ARE JUST THE BEGINNING

One of the unique aspects of the NIHSS's approach to the development of high-level academic talent is that the doctoral scholarships it awards are only the start of the relationship with talented young academics. Once students have graduated, they receive further opportunities to develop their academic and research careers and, in so doing, to contribute to the development of the HSS. Two key programmes that extend and deepen the relationship between alumni and the Institute are the annual HSS Alumni Conference and the Postdoctoral Research and Writing Programme.

## SECOND ANNUAL HSS ALUMNI CONFERENCE BRINGS ALUMNI TOGETHER

For the second consecutive year, in parallel with the ANDC, the Institute hosted the HSS Alumni Conference, offering its alumni opportunities to expand their networks and present their current research to their peers.

At the 2021 conference, held on 3 and 4 November, alumni presented 60 papers in 15 sessions organised across six themes.

Three alumni who presented papers won awards for their work. The winners of the best paper awards were Dr Azola Bobo

of Rhodes University, with her paper on how thoughtful community engagement can promote decolonisation and transformative learning in higher education; Dr Dumsani Gumede of the University of KwaZulu-Natal, whose paper was on rural-origin health professions students' perceptions of a support programme offered by Umthombo Yo; and Dr Thembelihle Makhanya, also of UKZN, whose paper explored students' experiences of (de)coloniality.

## POSTDOCTORAL FELLOWSHIPS DEEPEN TRANSFORMATIONAL SCHOLARSHIP

Established in 2020, the NIHSS Postdoctoral Research and Writing Programme aims to develop research capacity in fields promoting postcolonial and post-apartheid social responsibility, nation building, national development and the building of a democratic culture. Fellowships are awarded to early career scholars who conduct their research under the supervision and/or mentorship of principal investigators and leading scholars and researchers in signature project areas of specialisation.

The Institute monitored 30 existing postdoctoral fellowships during the 2021/22 financial year. (See more details under the heading "Prioritising the publications strategy".)



### 32 NEW POSTDOCTORAL FELLOWSHIPS AWARDED IN 2021/22

The Institute awarded 32 new postdoctoral fellowships in the 2021/22 financial year. The emphasis was on postdoctoral researchers with a keen interest in contextually relevant research with transformational impacts in the African context. These fellowships were distributed across seven centres at universities.

Of the 32 new fellowships awarded, 27 deal broadly with various topics in the humanities and social sciences and five look specifically at land and agrarian reform. The latter were awarded to researchers working under the Sam Moyo programme at the University of Johannesburg's Centre for Sociological Research. The high-level research envisaged is considered a fitting tribute to the late Prof Sam Moyo and as a much-needed contribution to the contested field of land and agrarian reform.

### PRIORITISING THE PUBLICATIONS STRATEGY

The Institute continues to prioritise its publication strategy by encouraging doctoral students, postdoctoral fellows and alumni to publish work emanating from their doctoral theses, thus enhancing transformation and contributing to the body of literature and knowledge.

Together, NIHSS-supported doctoral students and alumni make a substantial contribution to the research outputs of scholars associated with the Institute. In the year 2021/22, doctoral,



postdoctoral fellows and alumni produced 23 publications, consisting of journal articles, book chapters, books, creative outputs and conference proceedings.

### Top-performing postdoctoral fellows

Among the postdoctoral fellows who made an exceptional contribution in 2021/22 were Dr Zethembe Mseleku and Dr Ncamisile Thumile Zulu, both from the University of KwaZulu-Natal, Dr Vidhya Sana and Dr Laura de Harde, both from the University of Pretoria, and Dr Joseph Makhanda of the University of Johannesburg.

Youth, youth unemployment and youth graduate employability were the themes of Dr Mseleku's four journal articles:

- "Aspirations for higher education: evidence from youth living in Kenneth Gardens Municipal Housing Estate (Durban)";
- "Youth high unemployment/unemployability in South Africa: the unemployed graduates' perspectives";
- "From workplace to joblessness: the determinants of post-internship graduate unemployment in South Africa"; and
- "Local government internship and youth graduate employability: perspectives of interns, mentors and HR managers".

**Table 3: New postdoctoral fellowships awarded in 2021/22**

| Institution and Centre                                                                                                  | Postdoctoral fellow              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>The University of the Witwatersrand - School of Education (three postdoctoral fellowships)</b>                       | John Khazamula Simango           |
|                                                                                                                         | Aarifah Gardee                   |
|                                                                                                                         | Dale Heidi Langsford             |
| <b>Nelson Mandela University - Identities &amp; Social Cohesion in Africa (seven postdoctoral fellowships)</b>          | Marthie Momberg                  |
|                                                                                                                         | Abigail Wiese                    |
|                                                                                                                         | Georges Alexandre Lenferna       |
|                                                                                                                         | Joseph Maleke Sethabela          |
|                                                                                                                         | Jonnalee Donian                  |
|                                                                                                                         | Mvuzo Ponono                     |
|                                                                                                                         | Busisiwe Lujabe                  |
| <b>University of Johannesburg - Postgraduate School (four postdoctoral fellowships)</b>                                 | Noluthando Prudence Phungula     |
|                                                                                                                         | Knightingale Lulu Mmakola        |
|                                                                                                                         | Ntshengedzeni Evans Netshivhambe |
|                                                                                                                         | Zaakirah Iqbal Jeeva (Rawati)    |
| <b>The University of Johannesburg - Centre for Sociological Research &amp; Practice (five postdoctoral fellowships)</b> | Siphesihle Zantsi                |
|                                                                                                                         | Thabisile Luyanda Mtshali        |
|                                                                                                                         | Nolwazi Cynthia Dlamini          |
|                                                                                                                         | Mbuso Moyo                       |
| <b>Tshwane University of Technology - Arts &amp; Design (one postdoctoral fellowship)</b>                               | Mnqobi Ngubane                   |
|                                                                                                                         | Kgomotso Samuel Moshugi          |
| <b>Tshwane University of Technology - School of Education (four postdoctoral fellowships)</b>                           | Matefu Lefty Mabela              |
|                                                                                                                         | Glory Mable Chiloane             |
|                                                                                                                         | Hundzukani Portia Khosa          |
|                                                                                                                         | Magdeline Matsie Mokonyane       |
| <b>University of Western Cape - Centre for Humanities Research (eight postdoctoral fellowships)</b>                     | Cleo Beth Theron                 |
|                                                                                                                         | Dane Henry Isaacs                |
|                                                                                                                         | Kim Gurney                       |
|                                                                                                                         | Zakeera Docrat                   |
|                                                                                                                         | Iona Ingrid Gilbert              |
|                                                                                                                         | Michelle Smith                   |
|                                                                                                                         | Samuel Dominic Sadian            |
|                                                                                                                         | Shanleigh Roux                   |

Migrants in South Africa were the focus of Dr Makhandia's research. He published two research outputs titled "Meaning-making, negotiation and (de) construction of socio-political identities among migrants: The inclusion of the forgotten voices of forced migrants in South Africa" and "Conceptualisation, construction and negotiation of inter-migrant support and care among Congolese, Burundians and Zimbabweans in Yeoville, Johannesburg, South Africa".

Black women professors at South African universities were the focal point of Dr Zulu's work. She published two journal articles, titled "Black women professors in South African universities: advancing social justice" and "Academic identities of South African black women professors: A multiple case study".

Dr Sana published two journal articles on South African Indian culture and gender roles. These were titled "Consumption and excess: South African Indian comedy and the stereotypical performance of identity in post-apartheid South Africa" and "Bits and bytes and bites of bits: Instagram and the gendered performance of food production in the South African Indian community".

Rock art was the theme of Dr de Harde's work. She co-authored two articles, titled "Admirable facsimiles: coffee tables, copying contexts and Helen Tongue's rock art book c1909" and "Elizabeth Goodall and Walter Battiss: Inspired by the Art on the Rocks".

In addition, Dr de Harde's creative research work was entered for the 2021 Joburg Fringe and The Absa L'Atelier art competition and a series of her works was selected for the Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (KKNK) online exhibition "Progression", curated by Fadza Muchemwa.



Rešoketšwe Manenzhe was one of the youngest winners at the 6th Annual HSS Awards (2021) in the Best Fiction Single Author category, with Prof Sarah Mosoetsa, NIHSS CEO

○

## EXPANDING THE CIRCLE WITH HUMANITIES ENCOUNTERS

The Institute's model of expanding and strengthening communities of scholarship gains further momentum through the Humanities Encounters that have become a feature of the Annual National Doctoral Conference and the Annual HSS Alumni Conference. In these Encounters, past winners of HSS Awards for Book, Creative Collections and Digital Contributions are invited to these conferences to share their work and inspiration with current PhD students and alumni.

Three award-winning authors from the 2021 HSS Awards were invited to participate in Encounter Sessions, namely Rešoketšwe Manenzhe, Jamil F. Khan and Makhosazana Xaba.

### **Scatterlings: a story of painful homegoing and homecoming**

Rešoketšwe Manenzhe was one of the youngest winners at the 6th Annual HSS Awards (2021) in the Best Fiction Single Author category. She is a chemical engineer, academic and writer.

“I have done a bit more research, restructured the plot and reimagined the characters, so am hoping to complete that and have an editor look at the manuscripts before the year ends. I've also been editing my short stories with hopes of having a collection published soon. Other than that, I'm waiting for the American, Czech, Italian and German publications of *Scatterlings*.”

Rešoketšwe Manenzhe  
Best Fiction Single Author Winner

Her short stories and poems have appeared in the *Kalahari Review*, *Fireside Fiction*, *Praxis Magazine*, *Lolwe*, *FIYAH* and the 2017 *Sol Plaatjie European Union Anthology*, among others. She has won the 2019 Writivism Short Story Prize, the 2020 Dinaane Debut Fiction Award, the 2021 inaugural Akuko Short Story Competition, the 2021 HSS Award for Best Fiction and was the runner-up for the 2019 Collins Elesiro Prize for Fiction.

Since winning the HSS Awards last year, Rešoketšwe has been editing the two manuscripts she started before *Scatterlings*.

“I have done a bit more research, restructured the plot and reimagined the characters, so am hoping to complete that and have an editor look at the manuscripts before the year ends. I've also been editing my short stories with hopes of having a collection published soon. Other than that, I'm waiting for the American, Czech, Italian and German publications of *Scatterlings*,” she says.

She has also gone on to win the UJ Prize and the SALA award and been shortlisted for the Sunday Times Award.

“I've actually gone back to living my very private life,” she reflects. But I've since gotten more reviews and readers; so life has also changed in a lot of ways. It's been truly heartwarming to have people respond to the poetry in my work,” she says.



**Makhosazana Xaba, winner in the Best Fiction Edited Volume category at the 2021 HSS Awards for her anthology, *Our Words, Our Worlds. Writing on Black South African Women Poets, 2000 – 2018***

O.....

### **More than just a memoir of pain and suffering – towards a re-humanisation of society**

The award-winning author of *Khamr - The Makings of Waterslams*, Jamil F. Khan, took home the HSS Award for Best Fiction Biography in 2021.

*Khamr* has made even greater strides since last year and has also won the UJ Debut Award for South African Writing in English. Jamil has since also worked with organisations such as the Nelson Mandela Foundation during the 2021 Annual Lecture. The NIHSS was delighted to have him back for the NIHSS Doctoral Conference as a guest speaker in November 2021.

While mindful that there is much anticipation around his next book, Jamil has been focused on completing his PhD. He is also constantly writing and publishing on the topics he is passionate about on online platforms such as AMAKA and Art of Superwoman (AOS). Additionally, *Khamr* has been recorded as an audiobook which is due to be released in 2022 and he is working towards extending its life through other formats.

"I can certainly say that the visibility I received from winning the HSS Award has sparked great interest in my work, which has opened many doors for more collaborations and advancement of the work that I started in *Khamr*."

Jamil's debut novel maps his experience of living with an alcoholic father and the direct conflict of having to perform a Muslim life that taught him that nearly everything he called home was forbidden.

In a detailed account from his childhood to early adulthood, Jamil lays bare the experience of living in a so-called middle-class Coloured home in a neighbourhood called Bernadino Heights in Kraaifontein, a suburb to the north of Cape Town. His memories are overwhelmed by the constant discord that was created by the chaos and dysfunction of his alcoholic home and a co-dependent relationship with his mother, while trying to manage the daily routine of his parents keeping up appearances and his maintaining scholastic excellence.

Jamil's memories are clear and detailed, which in turn is complemented by his scholarly thinking and analysis of those memories. He interrogates the intersections of Islam, Colouredness and the hypocrisy of respectability, as well as the effect class status has on these social realities, giving the reader more than just a memoir of pain and suffering.

### **Black women poets being seen on their own terms**

Anthologist, essayist, storyteller, poet, short story writer, academic and mother, Makhosazana Xaba has published three collections of poetry, *These Hands* (2005 and 2017), *Tongues of their Mothers* (2008) and *The Alkalinity of Bottled Water* and is an editor of *Like the untouchable wind: an anthology of poems* (2016).

In 2021 Makhosazana was joint winner in the Best Fiction Edited Volume at the HSS Awards for her anthology, *Our Words, Our Worlds. Writing on Black South African Women Poets, 2000 – 2018*.

Since winning that award, Makhosazana has been appointed Associate Professor of Practice at the Faculty of Humanities at the University of Johannesburg to drive the creative work within the faculty.

In December 2021, she launched *The Art of Waiting For Tales*.

Her ongoing long-term project is a biography of Noni Jabavu, one of the first black South African women to pursue a successful literary career.



# STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 3

DYNAMISE THE FIELDS OF  
RESEARCH AND TEACHING IN  
THE HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL  
SCIENCES THROUGH A RANGE OF  
CATALYTIC RESEARCH PROJECTS  
AND HUMANITIES HUBS



Web-based exhibition by Liliesleaf Trust, an NIHSS Humanities Hub Project

An excellent research harvest was gathered in the 2021/22 financial year.

The NIHSS's communities of funded researchers outdid themselves by producing almost double the number of research outputs expected and holding four times as many academic events than planned.

Where the Institute had set a target of achieving 40 research outputs through its Catalytic Research Projects, Humanities Hubs, Working Group Projects and Professional Associations, the final tally at the end of the year was 79 outputs. As for academic events organised by NIHSS-funded project leaders and collaborators, they were expected to present a total of 10 conferences, workshops and colloquiums, among others, during the year. In the end, they succeeded in hosting 43 such events, an overperformance of 430%.

All this was delivered within the original funding agreements set for NIHSS-funded research – agreements that were sufficient but not overgenerous to start with given the understandable constraints on the availability of funding in economic conditions exacerbated by the Covid-19 pandemic.

In managing to stretch their funding from the Institute to the extent that they did in 2021/22, the leaders and members of Catalytic Research Projects and Humanities Hubs have shown themselves to be prudent custodians of scarce public resources.

They have also shown themselves to be adept in the use of digital technologies for collaborative research activities which, apart from having resource-conserving implications, is an essential skill in this era of the digital humanities. These attributes, together with good old-fashioned hard work and ethics, underpin the exceptional productivity that characterised their research efforts during the year.

Yet the numbers of research outputs alone do not do justice to the research effort of 2021/22. The test is what impact the research is having, how accessible it is, both to the academic community and the general public and whether or not it is succeeding in dynamising research and teaching in the humanities and social sciences (HSS).

Eight years ago, when the Institute was just starting out and the HSS were still viewed primarily through a Global North-tinted lens, there was abundant “low-hanging fruit” to pluck in terms of research topics that could be approached in an overtly postcolonial and post-apartheid frame. Very little work had been done at that point on multilingualism in higher education, for instance, or on the healing potential of African-centred psychology, or on the precolonial history of Africa.

Under the auspices of the NIHSS, a respectable body of knowledge is starting to be accrued in various previously neglected, ignored or overlooked fields.

**Table 4: Catalytic Research Projects monitored in 2021/22**

| Project title                                                                                                           | Project leader and university    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Concepts of Life                                                                                                        | Prof Fiona Ross, UCT             |
| Defunct context, camera obscura                                                                                         | Dr Tebogo Mahashe, UCT           |
| The social life of books in North-West Africa: Mobility and book production in Timbuktu and beyond                      | Prof Shamil Jeppie, UCT          |
| Ezakudala                                                                                                               | Prof Cynthia Kros, UCT           |
| Development of a textbook in Sesotho for Sesotho teaching and learning in higher education                              | Dr Rethabile Possa-Mogoera, UCT  |
| Post-conflict hauntings: Transforming collective memories of historical trauma                                          | Prof Pumla Gobodo-Madikizela, SU |
| African Women in colonial and 'pre-colonial' histories on southern Africa and the African Diaspora                      | Prof Sifiso Ndlovu, UP           |
| Social life of waste art                                                                                                | Dr Detlev Krige, UP              |
| African oral art in image-text objects: Cultural translations of precolonial memories and remains                       | Prof Lize Kriel, UP              |
| A comparative analysis of liberation war radios Southern Africa 1960s - 1990s                                           | Prof Sekibakiba Lekgoathi, Wits  |
| Theorising education and social equality                                                                                | Prof Stephanie Allais, Wits      |
| Tsikinya-Chaka: promoting multilingualism and transnationalism in South Africa                                          | Prof Christopher Thurman, Wits   |
| Democracy from below – decolonising and re-theorising democracy for the future                                          | Prof Carin Runciman, Wits        |
| Transforming composition, music theory and orchestration for African music: Collaborative project with choral composers | Dr Andile Khumalo, Wits          |
| Covid-19 and gender-based violence: Meaning making through embroidery                                                   | Prof Puleng Segalo, UNISA        |
| MusoCulture: A music and public policy series                                                                           | Dr Akhona Ndzuta, UNISA          |
| Maternal legacies of knowledge: Towards a woman-centred sociology of the Eastern Cape                                   | Dr Babalwa Magoqwana, NMU        |
| Intellectualisation of isiZulu in four selected universities in the province of KwaZulu-Natal                           | Prof Nobuhle Hlongwa, UKZN       |
| Research project on histories of universities in South Africa                                                           | Prof Saleem Badat, UKZN          |
| Fracking, climate change and communities                                                                                | Prof Sadhana Manik, UKZN         |
| Indigenous Languages (the development of African languages for scientific use)<br>Forensic Linguistics Programme        | Prof Monwabisi Ralarala, UWC     |

While there are still vast “orchards” and swathes of underexplored ground to be discovered, researchers are now more often in the position of being able to build on the results of the early initiators, or to cast their gaze higher than the lowest branches.

Interestingly, this branching out is opening up opportunities to do research that might have seemed inconceivable a few years ago. Take Eastern Cape intellectual history, which was typically dominated by and documented from a colonial or western-hegemonic standpoint. Space has since been made for Xhosa-speaking historians of the calibre of Tiyo Siga and, most recently, the influence of his grandmother! For the first time, through a Catalytic Research Project run by Dr B Magoqwana of Nelson Mandela University, a gender-sensitive version of the Eastern Cape’s intellectual heritage is emerging. (Turn to page 49 for more details of this project on maternal legacies.)

Linguistic justice in South Africa’s criminal court system is another field whose surface had, not long ago, been left untouched. This is the passion of Prof Monwabisi Ralarala of the University of the Western Cape, who has not been satisfied with the usual argument that multilingualism in the courts is too impractical even to consider. His Catalytic Research Project, Indigenous Languages (the development of African languages for scientific use) Forensic Linguistics Programme (see page 50), is demonstrating that there may well be a case to argue for a more inclusive approach to linguistic justice.

A third Catalytic Research Project during 2021 that has opened up new avenues – not only in South Africa but globally – is “Covid-19 and gender-based violence: making meaning through embroidery”, led by Prof Puleng Segalo of UNISA (page 51). This work is so remarkable that it was chosen for the United Nations’ 16 Days of Activism Against Gender-Based Violence for 2021.

# CATALYTIC RESEARCH PROJECTS

## THE WISDOM OF GRANDMOTHERS COMES TO THE FORE IN THE EASTERN CAPE'S HIDDEN INTELLECTUAL HISTORIES

**Project name:** Maternal legacies of knowledge: Towards a women-centred sociology of the Eastern Cape

**Project leader:** Dr B Magoqwana, Nelson Mandela University

Masculine storytelling has traditionally dominated the Xhosa-speaking archive of the Eastern Cape, pointing to a lacuna in the intellectual histories of the province.

This project seeks to provide an alternative perspective, one that centralises the oral and textual histories of the indigenous woman – the grandmothers, mothers, aunts and sisters who, through their stories, folktales, stories of origin and the reciting of clan names (*iziduko*), located the histories of Xhosa-speakers and, without recognition, transferred this oral knowledge.

A gender-sensitive version of the Eastern Cape's intellectual history is emerging through a re-reading of historical texts, oral knowledge from grandmothers and reading of the arts, rituals, songs, rhymes, poems, proverbs (*amaqulo*) and idioms (*izaci*).

One of the team members, retired historian Dr Nomathamsanka Tisani, has been excavating the histories of royal women and *oomakhulu* (grandmothers) of isiXhosa-speaking intellectuals such as Tiyo Soga, who in the 1850s translated the Bible and John Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* into isiXhosa.

Tiyo Soga's grandmother is Nosuthu Jotela, whose contribution to the intellectual heritage of the province is becoming apparent through the work of Dr Tisani. Such histories can only be traced through a combination of archival and oral histories from the living vernacular sources in different parts of the province.

Other researchers who are contributing their skills in investigating the maternal histories of the Eastern Cape are Dr Nokuzola Mndende of the Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities Rights Commission and Prof Pamela Maseko, Executive Dean of the Faculty of Humanities at Nelson Mandela University.

This multidisciplinary project also draws on the knowledge of specialists in sociology, anthropology, African languages,

**NIHSS Catalytic Project:**  
Maternal Legacies of Knowledge Rethinking the Sociology of the Eastern Cape, South Africa

**Prof Pamela Maseko**  
Nelson Mandela University

**Prof Jimi Adesina**  
DST/NRF SARChI Chair in Social Policy

**Dr Babalwa Magoqwana**  
Nelson Mandela University

**Dr Nomathamsanka Tisani**  
Makhanda

**Prof Nokuzola Mndende**  
Nelson Mandela University

**25 JUNE 2021 | 09:00-16:00**  
**ZOOM WEBINAR**

**SPEAKERS**  
Dr Athambile Masola | Dr Denver Webb | Dr Neo Selikane-Mohlabane | Prof Simphiwe Sesanti Prof Nomalanga Mkhize | Dr Darlene Miller | Prof Grace Khunou | Chanel Van Der Merwe | Ryan Pillay Nontha Menye

**SPECIAL PERFORMANCE**  
Mthwakazi Chosi

Please click the link below to Register for the Symposium  
[\(Click here\)](#)

**NIHSS Catalytic Project leader Dr Magoqwana hosted the webinar**

gender studies, literature and political and international studies through a network of collaborations within the Nelson Mandela University and with researchers from Rhodes University, the University of Cape Town and the University of South Africa.

Fieldwork was conducted between January and April 2022, which was later than originally planned but the delay was a necessary safeguard given the vulnerability of elderly people amid the Covid-19 pandemic.

### Digital transfer across generations

A novel aspect of the project is that digital strategies will be established for the inter-generational transfer of women's knowledge systems. This will include digitising the oral archive of stories of origins (*amabali emvelo*), folktales (*iintsomi*) and myths shared by different generations of Eastern Cape women.

Capacity building and skills transfer are cornerstones of the project. Each senior academic has teamed up with a master's or PhD student for academic mentorship and training on report writing, planning and running events and curriculum design.

Scholarly outputs include an upcoming book, four virtual seminars, a special edition of the *Journal of Contemporary African Studies*, an international dialogue on the legacies of 25 Years of Beijing Platform for Action and a paper presentation at an international conference (the American Sociological Association Conference).

Contributions aimed at the general public included Dr Nokuzola Mndende's regular conversations on *Umhlobo Wenene FM*, a national radio station.

### MULTILINGUALISM IN SOUTH AFRICA'S COURTS: IMPRACTICAL OR A NECESSITY?

**Project name:** Indigenous Languages (the development of African languages for scientific use) Forensic Linguistics Programme

**Project leader:** Prof M Ralarala, University of the Western Cape

The question of linguistic justice in the South African criminal court system tends to be swept aside on the ground that it is simply not practical to apply multilingualism in the courts.

What that viewpoint overlooks is that using English only as the language of record ignores applied multilingualism as an act of redress. It also tends to miss the point that there have been few if any meaningful opportunities to test multilingualism in the justice system.

This Catalytic Research Project insists on a fresh approach toward linguistic equality and multilingualism in the criminal justice system and in other spheres of South African society.

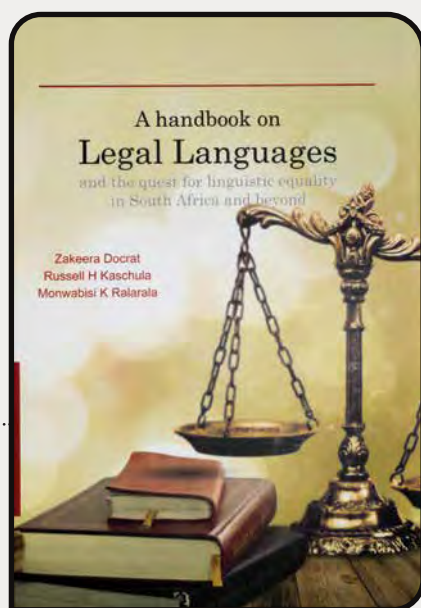
Under the leadership of Prof Monwabisi Ralarala, an authority on language as a human right and Dean of the Faculty of Arts and Humanities at UWC, the project team has been pushing the limits of conventional wisdom on multilingualism by investigating local, regional and global perspectives on linguistic justice and exploring ways to enforce the constitutional language rights of South Africans in the courts.

One of the team's most important outputs to date is *A handbook on Legal Languages and the quest for linguistic equality in South Africa and beyond*. Authored by Dr Zakeera Docrat, Prof Russell H Kaschula and Prof Ralarala, the handbook features case studies from Kenya, Morocco, Nigeria, Australia, Belgium, Canada and India on the use of language in courtroom discourse and higher education institutions.

The book argues for linguistically transforming and decolonising South Africa's legal and higher education systems so that legal practitioners are equipped to litigate in a bilingual or multilingual courtroom, enabling access to justice for the majority of African language-speaking litigants.

A second book is due to be published in March/April 2022, *Language and the Law: Global Perspectives in Forensic Linguistics from Africa and Beyond*. Meanwhile, three book chapters on language and the law issues are in press and two articles have appeared in the *South African Journal of African Languages*.

In addition, four postgraduate students of Linguistics and African Language Studies are doing research on pressing research questions such as immigrant minority groups and language rights in South Africa and meaning making and semantic dynamics in South African courts, with specific reference to African languages.



Research output by  
NIHSS Catalytic  
Research  
Project leader,  
Prof Monwabisi  
Ralarala



**Professor Puleng Segalo, Catalytic Research project leader, with women who participated at the project event**

Multilingualism and the law is a topic of considerable interest to academics in other multilingual settings around the world. Opportunities the team has used to learn from and share knowledge with their peers include attending the 22nd African Language Association of Southern Africa conference at Fort Hare University and the 15th Biennial Conference of the International Association of Forensic Linguists, hosted at Aston University in the United Kingdom.

The quest for linguistic justice continues unabated.

### **EMBROIDERED ARTWORKS EVOKE WOMEN'S EXPERIENCES OF GBV**

**Project name:** Covid-19 and gender-based violence: making meaning through embroidery

**Project leader:** Prof Puleng Segalo, University of South Africa

Sixteen stories of feminist activism from around the world were selected to be featured in the 16 Days of Activism Against Gender-Based Violence of 2021. One of them, from South Africa,

was evocatively titled "In the still of the night" and even more evocatively illustrated, using embroidered depictions of the terrors that community women experience in the "safety" of their homes.

Prof Puleng Segalo and a collective of women from a group called Intuthuko in Etwatwa in Gauteng spent weeks working together to produce this beautifully stitched and intensely disconcerting narrative "as a way to try and make sense of the varied ways in which GBV affects our communities", she says.

"Embroideries allow people to document their stories, pains, voices, struggles, subjectivities and dreams as they perceive them. Embroidery further allows space for the interweaving of people's life stories with history," says Prof Segalo, holder of the Chief Albert Luthuli Research Chair at UNISA.

In this way, the embroiderers come to understand that "GBV does not happen in isolation and is marked also by structural and historical imbalances that affected and continue to affect black communities".

The group's work also echoes sentiments of visual scholars who assert that the power of the visual image is universally comprehensible and accessible, Prof Segalo says. As such, visual imagery can be used to facilitate discussion, document experience and facilitate critical analysis of social reality and problem-solving.

Commenting on the connection between Covid-19 and GBV, she notes that the pandemic had worsened the challenge of violence against women. "While people were worried about protecting themselves against Covid-19, many women had the added burden of worrying about their safety within their own homes."

A haunting line from the lockdown poem she wrote, titled "In the still of the night", evokes these fears:

"Locked in this house alone with him for 21 days,  
I count each day as it passes by, slowly,  
As I struggle to breathe,  
Feeling the suffocation of his presence."

The material she developed for this photography and poetry project, consisting of booklets with high-quality photography, has also been distributed during community dialogue sessions on GBV, held to assist young girls and women collectively imagine ways to confront the challenges of GBV.

This Catalytic Research Project has given rise to a number of research outputs, including a paper accepted for the *Journal of International Women Studies* special edition, "Violence against women and girls in Africa – in the absence of ubuntu".

Other outputs were a UNISA webinar on the embroidery project, a paper at the "Women and 60 years of armed struggle" symposium and a paper at the Latin American Studies Association (LASA) conference.

"It is clear that GBV affects all of us either directly or indirectly," says Prof Segalo. "Therefore, the call to action is for all of us to play our role in the spaces we occupy. We should refuse to keep silent in the face of injustice – we must hold each other accountable so that we work towards a lasting solution."

## HUMANITIES HUBS

Humanities Hubs are sites for the preservation of the living heritages that are part of the South African landscape and are important vehicles for promoting the HSS among the broader public and communities through community outreach. The work of these Hubs is usually organised in focused themes, such as the history of the liberation movement in the case of Liliesleaf (the first Hub to have received NIHSS support) and the origins of humanity, in the case of the Wits Origins Hub.

### AUGMENTED REALITY ANIMATES ANCIENT ARTEFACTS AT WITS ORIGINS

#### Origins Centre Humanities Hub

**Project leader: Prof Amanda Esterhuysen, University of the Witwatersrand**

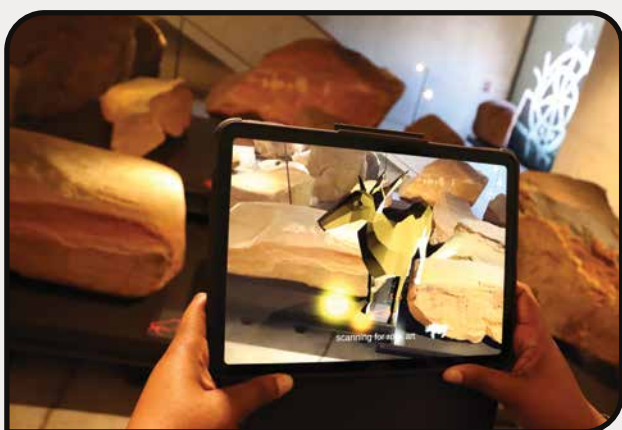
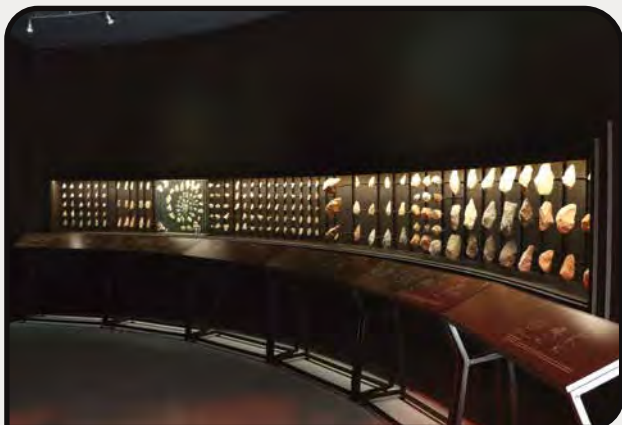
Museums are not the static, frozen-in-time places of yesterday; digital technologies such as augmented reality are infusing them with excitement and animating ancient artefacts.

When public spaces were shuttered at the height of the Covid-19 pandemic, the Origins Centre team started work on an augmented reality (AR) app that would create a truly immersive experience on the origins of humanity. Whether on-site or at home, users of the app would be able to select an image on display and bring it to three-dimensional life on their mobile phone screens.

Making this possible entails painstaking and specialised work, involving the scanning of the actual artefacts and the development of mechanisms for projecting and manipulating the images.

First, with the support of the NIHSS, the centre breathed virtual life into its Rock Engraving Archive, containing the largest collection of rock art on display on the African continent.

After extending the Origins Centre app to include the Spirit World section, the Origins team then moved on to the 3D hominin fossils (*hominini* being species regarded as human or directly ancestral to humans). This part of the app was also developed with the support of the Institute and is scheduled to go live during 2022. The dinosaur section will follow.



**Wits Origins Hub, Augmented Reality app**

Meanwhile, the NIHSS was contributing to four other Origins Centre initiatives throughout 2021. One of these initiatives was the digitisation of the film footage collated around and on the launch of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site. Forty tapes were digitised during the year, enabling the Origins Centre to provide footage to the Ditsong Museum in Tshwane and the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA).

In a completely different vein was the curation of the Trade Bead Exhibition. To deepen its narrative around glass and beads, the Origins team collaborated with the Fine and Applied Arts Department of the Tshwane University of Technology (TUT), where footage of glass pulling, moulding and bead making was filmed to show during the exhibition.

Art was commissioned from various bead artists across Johannesburg, such as Caitano Chikoko, whose beaded black rat embodied the rodents brought to Africa on boats from south Asia as they traded up and down the East African coast. Those boats were represented by a dhow made by South African artist

Hannelie Coetzee, who uses boat-building techniques to steam and shape wood.

The two other projects being developed with NIHSS funding are producing educational materials for the Early Sapiens Behaviour Exhibition, which will be open until the end of 2022 and curating the Empire Exhibition, which was at the research and development stage at the time of writing.

## THE POWER OF PUPPETRY AND THE LIFE OF CHARLOTTE MAXEKE

**Factory of the Arts/Ukwanda Puppets and Designs Collective**

**Project leader: Prof Heidi Grunebaum, Centre for Humanities Research**

In 1930, Alfred Xuma published an essay titled “Charlotte Manye: What an Educated African Girl Do” on the achievements of Charlotte Manye Maxeke, the first black South African woman to hold a college degree. Close to a century later, that title, slightly adapted as “What a Native Girl Can Do”, is the provisional title of a major new work on the life of Charlotte Maxeke – a puppetry production for theatre.

“Maxeke is so much more than we know and her legacy is so much larger and more geographically dispersed than is popularly represented,” says Professor Heidi Grunebaum of the Centre for Humanities Research (CHR), which has appointed Buhle Ngaba as artist in residence to write the script for the Charlotte Maxeke puppetry production.

The work is inspired by the scholarship of Dr Thozama April, now at the University of Fort Hare, whose PhD in history was on “Theorising women: the intellectual contributions of Charlotte Maxeke to the struggle for liberation in South Africa”. This thesis brought to light Charlotte’s international creative and intellectual pursuits and her important influence on the Pan-Africanist thought and theory of the Black Atlantic, as well as on leading international thinkers and activists such as WEB Du Bois.

A host of contributing artists, postgraduate fellows and scholars from the CHR are working on this endeavour to reimagine the intellectual, artistic and political legacy of Charlotte Maxeke, rehearsals for which are planned for 2022. This production will be the third puppetry production for theatre of the CHR’s Ukwanda Puppets and Designs Art Collective.



Performing Charlotte Maxeke, a Centre for Humanities Research production, Factory of the Arts/Library of Kinetic Objects Humanities Hub, Western Cape

The NIHSS's support is also enabling the CHR to further expand its artists in residence programme by appointing two next-generation artists in plastic and visual artists, as well as a specialist artist in residence in puppetry and performance, Dr Aja Marneweck. Her responsibilities include convening the Barrydale puppetry initiative with Net vir Pret, a community-based arts education organisation in this rural Western Cape town.

The annual Barrydale puppetry parade and performance has been running for 10 years, growing into a broad-based initiative involving more than 50 young artists, youth leaders and young mentors from Barrydale.

Says Prof Grunebaum: "We are particularly delighted that in 2021, Dylan Hess, a young artist from Barrydale who has been part of the annual puppetry production since it began and for the past eight years has been musician and performer on the project, will become the first student from Barrydale to enrol for postgraduate studies for a Master's in Linguistics at the University of the Western Cape".

### CENTRE FOR CREATIVE ARTS: A POWERHOUSE OF ACADEMIC EVENTS AND RESEARCH OUTPUTS

When it comes to productivity, few can match the energy of the University of KwaZulu-Natal's Centre for Creative Arts. Led by director Dr Ismail Mahomed, the Centre organised nine academic seminars, conferences and other academic events in 2021/22, accounting for close to a quarter of the 43 academic events presented across the year.

This extraordinary effort revolved around the Poetry Africa festival, a year-long celebration of slam poetry.

### POETRY AFRICA TURNS UP THE VOLUME IN 'UNMUTE – POWER TO THE POET'

Some academics have been known to look on disapprovingly as slam poets throw away the rule book but there is no denying the genre's massive success as an artistic and social movement, especially in articulating social justice issues such as #BlackLivesMatter, LGBTQ+, gender, sexuality, anti-racism and decolonisation movements.

There is also little doubt that slam poetry offers ample opportunities for intellectual exploration, as the University of KwaZulu-Natal's Centre for Creative Arts demonstrated during 2021 in its work on the rise and development of slam poetry in South Africa.

This Working Group Project marked the 25th edition of the centre's annual Poetry Africa festival, which over the years has grown into an international poetry event with participants from Europe, Asia, America and each and every region of Africa – north, south, east, west and central.

The NIHSS grant enabled the Centre for Creative Arts to extend its Poetry Africa programme, which ran under the theme "Unmute – power to the poet", to a year-round engagement with slam poets to discuss ideas, share creative resources and critically engage with slam poetry as an expressive art form that disrupts, provokes and advocates for social change.

In the process, some significant creative and research outputs were delivered, one being *Hashtag Poetry*, an anthology of poems by 25 poets who have participated in various editions of Poetry Africa.

"The hashtag has become the loud hailer of the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Its ability to gather voices and often bodies into a space of unified action for a cause or against injustice is unprecedented. Local causes become global movements; individual deaths galvanise multiple voices and the clarion call travels at the speed of the fastest data connection," wrote Tracey Saunders, who compiled the anthology together with Dr Ismail Mahomed and Siphindile Hlongwa.

**Table 5: Humanities Hubs monitored in 2021/22**

| Project name and province                             | Project leaders         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Liliesleaf, Gauteng                                   | Mr Nic Wolpe            |
| Robben Island Museum, Western Cape                    | Mr Mava Dada            |
| Market Theatre Foundation, Gauteng                    | Ms Tshiamo Mokgadi      |
| Wits Origins Centre, Gauteng                          | Prof Amanda Esterhuysen |
| Hunterstoun Heritage Centre, Eastern Cape             | Dr Liz Thomas           |
| Centre for Humanities Research                        | Prof Heidi Grunebaum    |
| African Languages Literary Heritage Hub               | Prof Pamela Maseko      |
| Javett Art Centre, Gauteng                            | Mr Lekgetho Makola      |
| University of Cape Town Jagger Library Humanities Hub | Ms Ujala Satgoor        |

*The first seven Humanities Hubs listed in the table above have received support from the Institute for the past five years, while the last two were added during the year under review.*

Among the hashtag poems featured in *Hashtag Anthology* are #JusticeForNathaniel in commemoration of 16-year-old Nathaniel “Lockie” Julies and #IAmWinnie and #SheDidntDieSheMultiplied, in honour of Winnie Madikizela-Mandela. Others are #PayBackTheMoney and #WhistleBlowing, #MeToo and #MenAreTrash and, on a more optimistic note, Dr Gcina Mhlophe’s closing poem, “Come out and watch”, looking towards a brighter future for African women.

Other noteworthy outputs were the third edition of the *Imbiza Journal for African Writing* and the *Poetics of Transformation*, a documentary blending video footage from past Poetry Africa festivals, animated illustrations, a call-and-response soundscape and photography.

The documentary explores poetry’s positioning within the broader ecology of social justice movements articulated by contemporary hashtag movements and will be distributed to different audiences at secondary and tertiary arts education institutions, poetry collectives and arts organisations in Durban. During 2022, the Centre for Creative Arts will hold focus group sessions to ascertain the documentary’s value for different audiences.

The *Imbiza Journal for African Writing* third edition comprised 10 feature articles, six essays, 27 poems and six book reviews. NIHSS alumnus, Dr Siphiwo Mahala was the guest editor in chief, working with fellow guest editors, Ongezwa Mbele and Nomcebisi Moyikwa of the UKZN.

Six slam poetry workshops were held across the year on significant days such as Human Rights Day on 21 March, Youth Day on 16 June and Women’s Day on 9 August.

The Women’s Day workshop was the inspiration for an all-women

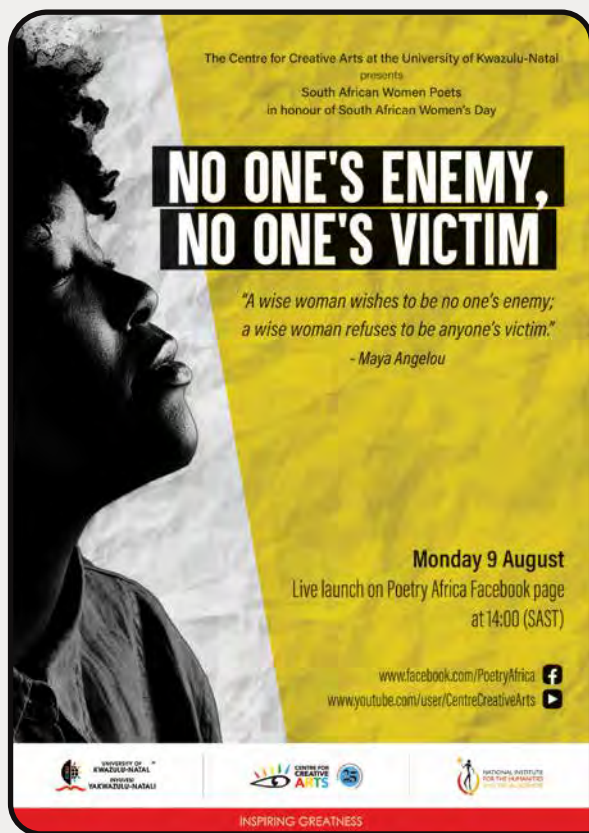
live performance titled *Umfuleni* at the Playhouse Theatre in Durban on 15 October 2021.

This performance coincided with the Poetry Africa international poetry festival from 11 to 16 October 2021, with more than 80 poets from 25 countries participating. The events included poetry readings, webinars, experimental cross-disciplinary work and three competitions: a schools competition that drew 231 entries, an open mic competition with 325 contestants and a “slam jam” with 105 entries.

## 10 ACADEMIC EVENTS PLANNED, 43 DELIVERED

From lunch-time talks and dinner-table seminars to full-day workshops, a winter school and various webinars, HSS scholars and researchers whose projects were supported by the NIHSS presented a rich array of academic events during 2021/22. The cumulative output of 43 events was more than four times the targeted number. The 43 events are listed below and overleaf:

- A webinar presentation by Dr Letitia Smuts titled “Heteronormativity: What is it and why should we care?” jointly organised by the UJ Department of Sociology and the Department of Anthropology and Development on 24 March 2021.
- Time of the Writer: Coffee Club titled “Yesterdays and Imagining Realities” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts on 21 March 2021.
- Time of the Writer: Lunch Hour titled “A Morning of isiXhosa Poetry from the Eastern Cape” presented by the Amazwi South African Museum Literature on 21 March 2021.
- Time of the writer: Dinner Table Seminar titled “Poetry for Human Rights” hosted by the Centre of Creative Arts on 21 March 2021.



A webinar titled “No One’s Enemy, No One’s Victim” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts at the University of KwaZulu-Natal on 9 August 2021.

- 22nd ICSD Biennial Conference hosted by the International Consortium for Social Development from 13-16 July 2021.
- Webinar titled “The CPSA and Early Socialist Traditions” hosted by South African History Online (SAHO) on 27 July 2021.
- Book discussion webinar titled “Bodies, Spaces, Objects and Schooling” hosted by Dr Letitia Smuts on 27 July 2021.
- Webinar titled “Artfluence Human Rights Festival: Voices of Hope, Courage and Resilience” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts from 5-8 May 2021.
- Webinar titled “JOMBA! 2021 MASIHAMBISANE Dialogues” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts from 2-4 June 2021.
- Awareness and Stakeholder Mapping Workshop on “Big Data Analytic Tool on the Impact of Covid-19 on the Girl Child Education in the Eastern Cape Province”, hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts on 5 August 2021.
- Virtual launch titled “Women In the Struggle: 1950-1965” co-hosted by the Liliesleaf Humanities Hub and NIHSS on 9 August 2021.
- Webinar titled “No One’s Enemy, No One’s Victim” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts at the University of KwaZulu-Natal on 9 August 2021.
- Webinar titled “Vaccine acceptance and hesitancy: Latest findings from the UJ/HSRC Covid-19 Democracy Survey” hosted by The UJ Library together with the Centre for Social Change and the Developmental, Capable and Ethical State research division of the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) on 18 August 2021.
- 23rd JOMBA Festival: Contemporary Dance Experience hosted by UKZN’s Centre for Creative Arts from 24 August – 5 September 2021.
- Time of the Writer: Cocktail Hour titled “Poets from the Continent” hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts on 21 March 2021.
- Encounter Session: Dr Sibongiseni Mkhize, *The Political Biography of Selby Msimang* on 1 June 2021.
- Prof Clifford Odimegwu hosted a “National Sexual and Reproductive Health Stakeholders” on Roundtable Covid-19 Pandemic Restrictions and Sexual and Reproductive Health in South Africa – Experiences, Lessons and Policy Implications on 17 June 2021.
- Dr Babalwa Magoqwana hosted a webinar titled “To My Children’s Children: A conversation between Dr Sindiwe Magona and Prof Puleng Segalo” on 15 June 2021.
- Dr Babalwa Magoqwana hosted a symposium titled “Maternal Legacies of Knowledge: Rethinking the Sociology of the Eastern Cape, South Africa” on 25 June 2021.
- Winter school titled “Sexualities” hosted by Dr Letitia Smuts from 1-2 July 2021.

- Webinar titled “Celebrating Strategic Research: Driver of Human Progress and Antidote Against Irrationality” hosted by MISTRA on 31 August 2021.
- Webinar titled “Mapungubwe Annual Lecture 2021: Will Covid-19 Raise Inequality? Evidence from Past Pandemics and Crises” hosted by MISTRA on 31 August 2021.
- Theatre Think Tank titled “Umsebenzi” hosted by the Market Theatre Foundation on 27 May 2021.
- Webinar titled “Socialism, Culture and Networks” hosted by SAHO on 15 September 2021.
- Colloquium titled “A Re Bueng Seminars: Emergent modalities in producing and experiencing the creative industries in the time of Covid-19” hosted by Dr Pfunzo Sidogi on 17 September 2021.
- FCAL Webinar Series -2021 titled “Strengthening Economic Resilience in the face of the Covid-19 Pandemic” hosted by Dr Sheunesu Zhou on 23 September 2021.
- Colloquium titled “The Politics of Knowledge Production in African Studies” hosted by the Centre for African Studies from 29 September 2021 to 1 October 2021.
- Webinar titled “A Conversation on Gender Transformation - Meanings, Practices and Futures in Higher Education” hosted by Dr Babalwa Magoqwana on 18 November 2021.
- Poetry Africa Festival hosted by the Centre for Creative Arts (UKZN) on 11-15 October 2021.
- Online seminar presented by Raphael d’Abdon, hosted by the Tsikinya-Chaka Centre, School of Literature, Language and Media, Wits University on 6 September 2021.
- Outreach held at the Inanda Seminary School by Ms Asanda Sizani on 5 February 2022.
- Webinar titled “South African Music in National Development” hosted by the Chief Albert Luthuli Research Chair at UNISA on 10 February 2022.
- Book launch for the publication titled *Return to the Scene of the Crime: The Returnee Detective and Postcolonial Crime Fiction* by Kamil Naicker, hosted by University of KwaZulu-Natal Press on 14 February 2022.
- Live event presented by Ms Asanda Sizani at The Forge, Johannesburg on 11 February 2022, as part of a screening and panel discussion of the Nokutela Mdimba-Dube project.
- Webinar titled “Debating Socialist Lineages” hosted by South African History Online on 25 November 2021.
- Panel hosted by South African History Online at a webinar titled “Forward to Socialism/Socialist Futures” on 15 November 2021.
- South African History Online hosted panel two of the webinar titled “Socialism/Socialist Futures” on 15 November 2021.
- Webinar titled “Strategic debates, the ANC-SACP Alliance and the Soviet Union” hosted by South African History Online on 20 October 2021.
- Book launch for *Guerrilla Radios in South Africa: Broadcasters, Technology, Propaganda Wars and the Armed Struggle*, hosted by Wits University Press on 26 October 2021.
- World hearing day online CPD event titled “Preventive Audiology: Focus on Complexities and Challenges in the African Context” hosted by Prof Katijah Khoza-Shangase on 3 March 2022.
- Exhibition titled “Violation of Human Rights: The Many Faces of Gender-Based Violence - A Visual Story” hosted by Prof Puleng Segalo on 10 March 2022.
- Book launch for *Bahlabelelani - Why Do They Sing: Gender and Power in Contemporary Women’s Songs* by Nompumelelo Zondi, hosted by UKZN press on 18 March 2022.
- Young graduates and scholars conference, “Arts, Culture and Heritage: Rethinking, Remaking and Rebuilding Africa”, hosted by Tshwane University of Technology on 22-24 March 2022.



## STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 4

PROMOTE THE INTEGRITY, REPUTATION  
AND RECOGNITION OF THE HUMANITIES  
AND SOCIAL SCIENCES WITHIN THE  
HIGHER EDUCATION COMMUNITY,  
THE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY  
COMMUNITY AND SOCIETY



**Table 6: New Working Group projects that were funded by the NIHSS in the 2021/22 financial year**

| Name of project leader            | Institution                                   | Programme                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Dr Thembinkosi Goniwe             | Rhodes University                             | The Writing of David Koloane's Legacy                                                                                                                                                        |
| Prof Tinyiko Maluleke             | University of Pretoria                        | Postgraduate capacity building                                                                                                                                                               |
| Dr Sphiwo Mahala                  | University of Pretoria                        | Publication of issue two of <i>Imbiza Journal for African writing</i>                                                                                                                        |
| Mr Vally and Mr Monama            | Real African Publishers                       | Publication of introduction to South African Guitar styles vol 1                                                                                                                             |
| Prof Keyan Tomaselli              | University of Johannesburg                    | Critical Arts Post-Doctoral Publishing                                                                                                                                                       |
| Mr Omar Badsha                    | South African History Online                  | SAHO: Africa and the South African Liberation Struggle                                                                                                                                       |
| Dr Geraldine Frieslaar            | Stellenbosch University                       | Transformation of archives and heritage education in post-apartheid South Africa                                                                                                             |
| Dr Luvuyo Dondolo                 | University of Fort Hare                       | New African Movement book project                                                                                                                                                            |
| Dr Lesley Powell                  | Nelson Mandela University                     | Putting Skills to Work: Skills, Livelihoods and the Informal Sector                                                                                                                          |
| Dr Napjadi Letsoalo               | University of South Africa                    | Multilingual and multicultural approach to language learning and communication                                                                                                               |
| Dr Neo Ramoupi                    | University of the Witwatersrand               | Izingoma Zo Mzabalazo Esigithini: Culture History of Robben Island Maximum Security Prison in South Africa, 1960 -1991                                                                       |
| Dr Refiloe Lepere                 | Tshwane University of Pretoria                | Exhibition/Performance Creative Research Seminars                                                                                                                                            |
| Dr William Fourie                 | Rhodes University                             | Indigenous Music Technologies                                                                                                                                                                |
| Prof Noor Nieftagodien            | University of Witwatersrand                   | Life History, Political Biography and Struggle History                                                                                                                                       |
| Mr Mandla Mlangeni                | University of Witwatersrand                   | Oratorio of a Forgotten Youth                                                                                                                                                                |
| Ms Jolyn Phillips                 | University of Johannesburg                    | Inau                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Ms Swati Mandela                  | Winnie Madikizela-Mandela Memorial            | Winnie Madikizela-Mandela Educational Legacy Series                                                                                                                                          |
| Prof Mzukisi Qobo                 | University of Witwatersrand                   | Wits School of Governance and SAPES collaboration                                                                                                                                            |
| Dr Thembelihle Makhanya           | University of KwaZulu-Natal                   | Exploring the Impact of Covid-19 in African Higher Education System                                                                                                                          |
| Ms Lindiwe Hani                   | The Hani Legacy                               | My Father, Chris Hani                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Dr Yacoob Abba Omar               | Mapungubwe Institute for Strategic Reflection | MISTRA and NIHSS collaboration                                                                                                                                                               |
| Asanda Sizani and Busisiwe Sizani | Legacy Multimedia Solutions                   | Amagama ka Nokutula Collaboration                                                                                                                                                            |
| Prof Zoliswa Fikelephi-Twani      | University of Zululand                        | The life and times of Professor Khabi Vivien Mngoma: a contribution to music education in South Africa                                                                                       |
| Mx Jamil Khan                     | University of the Witwatersrand               | Cape Flats Stories Compilation                                                                                                                                                               |
| Ms Debra Primo                    | University of KwaZulu-Natal Press             | Magema Fuze Project                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Ms Veronica Klipp                 | University of Witwatersrand Press             | Collaboration on new publishing projects                                                                                                                                                     |
| Dr Bianca Parry                   | University of Pretoria                        | Understanding Incarcerated Higher Education through a Capability Lens: Accessibility and Inclusivity of Open Distance eLearning as experienced by Incarcerated South African Female Students |
| Ms Bridget Impey                  | Jacana Media                                  | Collaboration on new publishing projects                                                                                                                                                     |
| Mr Jeremy Wightman                | HSRC Press                                    | Collaboration on new publishing projects                                                                                                                                                     |

*continued*

"This project has an ethos of sharing and collaboration and in that way, we are building capacity for all involved. Local artists, students, traditional healers, community leaders, musicians, music promoters and academics are all engaged in sharing knowledge," says Dr Olsen.

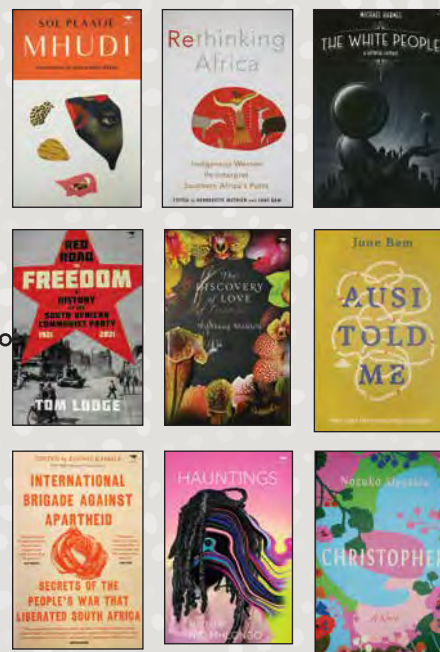
"We are constantly developing plans for sustainable engagement by offering support for those with careers in music and documentation. By making available strategies of exchange that build skills and recognise local belief systems and mechanisms of empowerment, we believe we will build capacity in a meaningful and productive way."

## HIGHLIGHTS OF OUR WORKING GROUP OUTPUTS

In the 2021/22 financial year, a total of 30 books were published through the partnerships between the NIHSS and book publishers in South Africa.

### Jacana Media published nine books, two of which won 2022 HSS Awards in the Fiction category:

- Sabata Mokae, *Sol Plaatjie Mhudi: An Epic of South African Native Life a Hundred Years Ago*
- Bernadette Muthien and June Bam, *Rethinking Africa: Indigenous Women Re-interpret Southern Africa's Pasts*.
- Michael Harmel, *The White People*
- Tom Lodge, *Red Road to Freedom: A History of the South African Communist Party 1921-2021*
- Nthikeng Mohlele, *The Discovery of Love Stories*. (2022 HSS Award winner)
- June Bam, *Ausi Told Me*
- Ronnie Kasrils, *International Brigade Against Apartheid*
- Niq Mhlono, *Hauntings*. (HSS Award 2022 winner)
- Nozuko Siyotula, *Christopher: A novel*



### HSRC Press published two books, one of which was a finalist in the 2022 HSS Awards:

- Neo Lekgotla Iaga Ramoupi, Noel Solani, André Odendaal, Khwezi ka Mpumlwana, *Robben Island Rainbow Dream: The Making of Democratic South Africa's First National Heritage Institution*. (HSS Award 2022 finalist)
- Vusi Gumede, Mammo Muchie, Ajobush Shafi, *Indigenous Systems and Africa's Development*



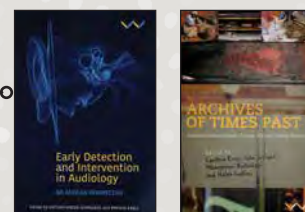
### Modjaji Books published one book:

- Uvile Ximba, *Dreaming in Colour*



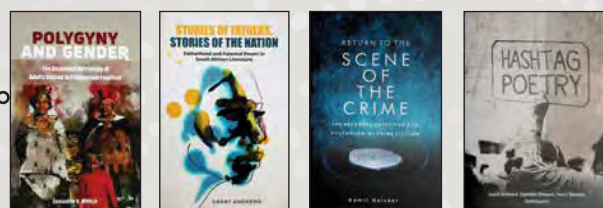
### Wits Press published two books:

- Katijah Khoza-Shangase and Amisha Kanji, *Early Detection and intervention in Audiology: An African Perspective*
- Cynthia Kros, John Wright, Mbongiseni Buthelezi, Helen Ludlow, *Archives of Times Past*



### UKZN Press published four books:

- Zamambo Mkhize, *Polygyny and Gender: The Gendered Narratives of Adults in Polygynous Families*
- Grant Andrews, *Stories of Fathers, Stories of the Nation: Fatherhood and Paternal Power in South African Literature*
- Kamil Naicker, *Return to the Scene of the Crime: The Returnee Detective and Postcolonial Crime Fiction*
- Ismail Mahomed, Siphindile Hlongwa and Tracey Saunders, *Hashtag Poetry*





Left Ms K Ntuli; front Mr T Mteto, right Prof S Mbanga



Students attend the ICSD conference, Premier Regent Hotel

## PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS

The NIHSS has continued to extend its support to professional associations in the HSS through awarding funding toward conferences, annual general meetings, workshops, seminars, publication of academic journals, international collaborations and student conference attendance and participation. This is to ensure that the higher education landscape is more responsive to and inclusive of the HSS and its disciplinary particularities. In the 2021/22 financial year, the NIHSS funded three professional associations through ad hoc applications, namely South African Sociological Association (SASA), the Oral History Association of South Africa (OHASA) and the Digital Humanities Association of Southern Africa (DHASA).

The Institute also monitored seven professional associations, as shown in the table.

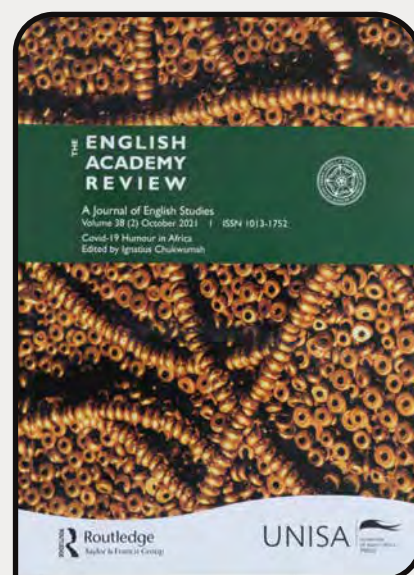
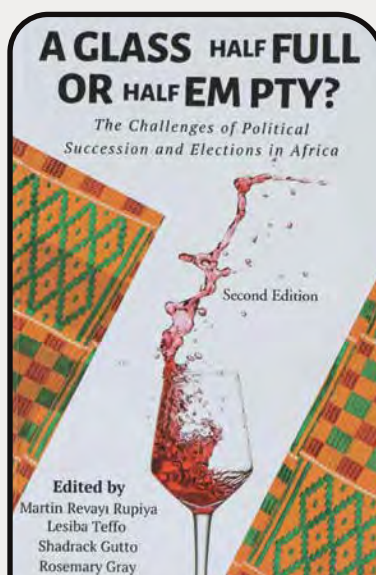
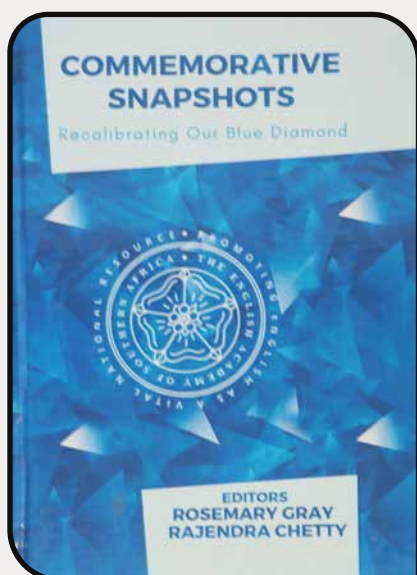
**Table 7: Professional Associations monitored in 2021/22**

| #  | Professional Association                                    |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | International Consortium of Social Development              |
| 2. | Institute of Human Settlement Practitioners of South Africa |
| 3. | South African Young Academy of Science                      |
| 4. | South African Society of Archivists                         |
| 5. | English Academy of Southern Africa                          |
| 6. | HSS Alumni Association                                      |
| 7. | South African Humanities Deans' Association                 |

Held under the theme *Poverty, Inequality and Social Development Innovation around the world*, the NIHSS funded the 22<sup>nd</sup> Biennial Conference of the International Consortium for Social Development (ICSD) which was hosted virtually from 13 – 16 July 2021.

The conference organisers were able to bring together over 400 development scholars, practitioners, decision makers and development agents from 42 countries across six continents to share knowledge, policy and practice solutions to address pressing issues of our times. Over four days, over 240 presentations were heard and over 80 hours of social development-focused content was created, which has remained available to participants until 12 July 2022.

The conference also saw the launch of the ICSD Africa branch, Financial Capability and Asset Building in Africa (FCAB Africa network) and the Cash Plus Care in the Global South network. Five African scholars were also awarded the Leadership in ICSD Award during the conference.



Founded in 1961, the English Academy of Southern Africa (EASA) has been engaged with contemporary debates around decolonisation, language rights, dilemmas around literacy achievement in schools and the hegemonic tension over whether English is the liberator or gatekeeper in postcolonial contexts.

One of the primary objectives of the Academy has been an encouragement of South African literature with the award of prestigious prizes for poetry, drama, novels, short stories, youth writings, critical essays and reviews. Award winners include the Nobel laureates Nadine Gordimer and JM Coetzee and poets of the black consciousness movement such as Oswald Mtshali, Siphos Sepamla and, Mtutuzeli Matshoba. The Academy's highest honour, the gold medal, has been presented for extraordinary contribution to English to such luminaries as Ezekiel Mphahlele, Lewis Nkosi, Njabulo Ndebele and Athol Fugard.

The English Academy's 20th International Conference was held virtually from 6-8 October 2021 and was hosted by the University of the Western Cape. Further funded by the NIHSS, the Academy produced the following three publications:

- Rupiya, MR; Teffo, L; Gutto, S and Gray, R. 2021. *A Glass Half Full or Half Empty? The Challenges of Political Succession and Elections in Africa*. JHB: Ssali Publishing House
- Gray, R and Chetty, R. 2022. *Commemorative Snapshots: Recalibrating Our Blue Diamond*. Ssali Publishing House: Johannesburg

#### Publications by the English Academy of Southern Africa

○

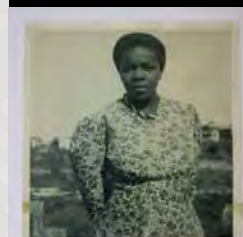
- Chukwumah, I. 2021. *Covid-19 Humour in Africa*. *A Journal of English Studies*, 38:2. ISSN 1013-1752

In addition, the NIHSS supported the Human Settlements and Housing African Regional Student Conference (HS & HARSC) which was held on 27-29 October 2021. The conference was held in a hybrid format in partnership with the University of Fort Hare (UFH).

At the conference, the Board Chairman of IHSP-SA Prof Sijekula Mbanga, who is also the Chair of Human Settlements in the Nelson Mandela University, remarked that the IHSP-SA was in engagements with the National School of Government, who had just released a Framework on Professionalisation, with an aim to have formal collaboration. IHSP-SA is a voluntary independent professional body for housing and human settlement professionals in South Africa. It is advocating the interests of its members through programmes for their professionalisation in the field.

Prof Mbanga further indicated IHSP-SA seeks to promote higher standards of ethics, paving the way to the establishment of a Professional Council in Human Settlements in South Africa as there is none.

# 7<sup>th</sup> HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES AWARDS



**ILIFA**  
Athambile Masola  
Imibongo



**FEMALE FEAR FACTORY**  
PUMLA DINEO GQOLA



**Yellow Shade**  
Dimakatso Sedite



**Ronelda S Kamfer**  
**KOMPOUN**  
in Poetry



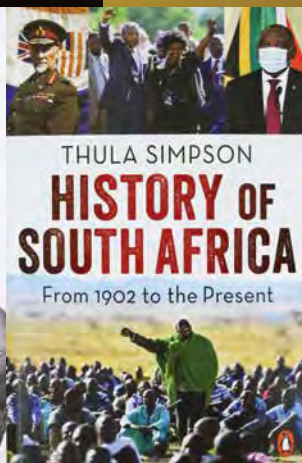
**THE LOST LANGUAGE OF THE SOUL**  
A NOVEL  
**MANDLA LANGA**



**The DISCOVERY of LOVE**  
Nthikeng Molele



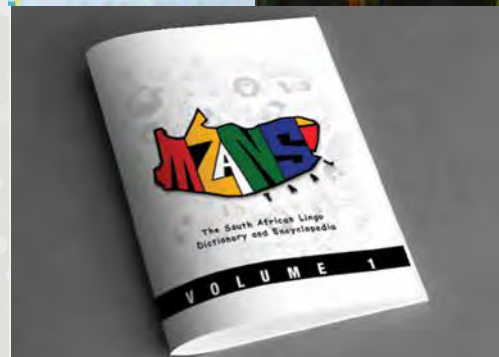
**JOHNNY CLEGG**  
My Early Years  
*Scatterling of Africa*



**THULA SIMPSON**  
**HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA**  
From 1902 to the Present



**DREAMS AS R-evolution**  
Coral Bijoux



**MANS**  
The South African Linguistics Dictionary and Encyclopedia  
VOLUME 1



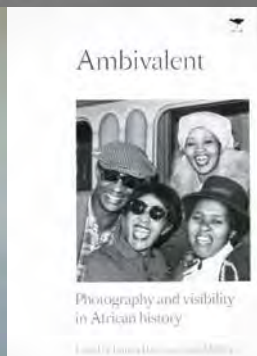
**2022 HSS AWARDS**  
BOOK, CREATIVE COLLECTION AND DIGITAL CONTRIBUTIONS

**7th YEAR**

CELEBRATING EXCELLENCE IN THE HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES



**WILD IMPERFECTIONS**  
AN ANTHOLOGY OF WOMANIST POEMS  
COMPILED & EDITED BY NATALIA WOSKATY  
FOREWORD BY RENEEBENNE SWARTZ

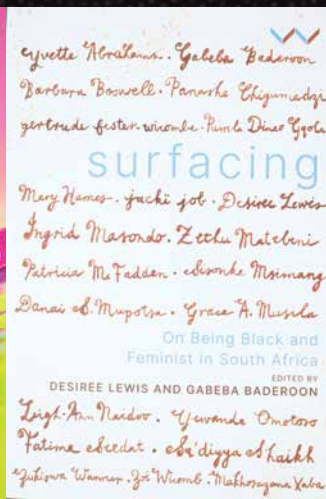


**Ambivalent**  
Photography and visibility in African history



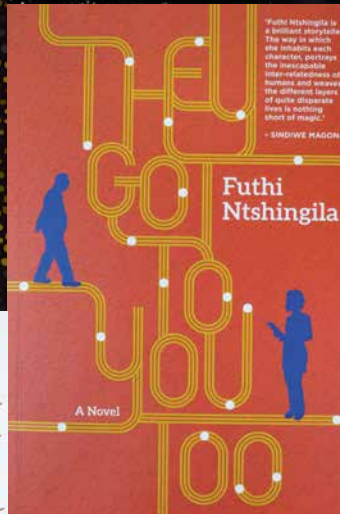
**HAUNTINGS**

EDITED BY  
**NIQ MHLONGO**



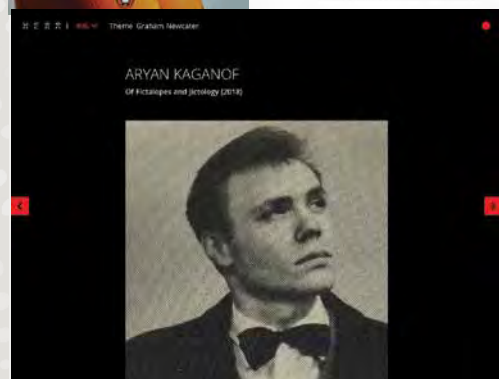
**surfacing**  
Mary Nemes, Jacki Job, Desiree Lewis, Ingrid Masendo, Zethu Matloleni, Patricia M. Fadden, edsonde Msimang, Banai M. Mupfema, Grace A. Musile  
On Being Black and Feminist in South Africa  
EDITED BY  
DESIREE LEWIS AND GABEBA BADERON

Leigh Ann Naidoo, Yvonne Omotoso, Fatima elcidat, ebi'digga ab haikh, Zubeida Wannan, Zwi Wicomb, Makhezena Xaba



**Futhi Ntshingila**

A Novel



**ARYAN KAGANOF**  
OF Exchanges and Journeys (2019)



**THE SOUNDS OF HLAKANYANA**



**Prof Sarah Mosoetsa, NIHSS CEO (centre) with the judges and winners of the 2022 HSS Awards**

O.....

The NIHSS feels a profound satisfaction and gratitude for the contribution South Africa's creative-intellectuals are making to the opening up of viewpoints and vantage points in our society. Each in their own way, whether with words, brush strokes, digital keystrokes, musical notes or body movements, the members of this community are expanding the possibilities humanity has at its disposal to make sense of our worlds.

Celebrating the 7<sup>th</sup> year of the Humanities and Social Sciences Awards has been significant in more ways than one, from the indigenous language diversity that came to the fore to the marking of the end of an era as the NIHSS paid tribute to its inimitable Chairperson, Prof Ari Sitas.

This year's Awards, held at the University of Pretoria's Javett Art Centre (Javett-UP) on 31 March 2022, coincided with the end of Prof Sitas' tenure as Chairperson of the NIHSS Board. The Institute used the opportunity to honour Prof Sitas.

"Ari's audacity has many facets and there is no doubt that he navigates both the worlds of struggle and scholarship with ease, even though we all know that is not easy. He makes it look easy because his entire being is wrapped up in both these worlds. He presents a persona of the ordinary, even when we know that he is a much-decorated man," said Prof Fred Hendricks, non-fiction chair judge of the HSS Awards.

In his tribute to Prof Sitas, Prof Hendricks pointed to the remarkable and formidable work he and NIHSS CEO Prof Sarah Mosoetsa had undertaken in setting up the NIHSS in December 2013. He said they had begun their work in the context of the enduring racialised legacies of apartheid at a tertiary level and specifically in the humanities and social sciences.

"The deep inequalities in our university system in South Africa have proven extremely stubborn and resistant to change. Ten years ago, when the HSS were in decline, something clearly needed to be done and it could not just be a matter of business as usual. Here Prof Sitas, the man of ideas, became a man of action, but it was not uninformed action, or rhetoric, it was action premised on ideas about how we might address some of our enduring problems."

Prof Sitas and Prof Mosoetsa took consultation extremely seriously, said Prof Hendricks. They toured the length and breadth of the country, assessing needs and finding out just how HSS courses were being taught, for example at the first-year level at the different universities.

Yet, despite this widespread consultation and their progressive intent to tackle the HSS's problems, there was opposition from some quarters which, despite many protestations to the contrary, were deeply implicated in maintaining the status quo of racialised inequality. "Things were not plain sailing at all in establishing the Institute. It involved a struggle, not only to navigate the complexities of various university campuses but also to appreciate the arcane realities of government administration and its stifling bureaucracy," Prof Hendricks said.



“I hope you are encouraged this evening that surely a day has come, when what could have been your unbelievable and totally impossible creations of art have become established into fully fledged coal/gold mines within our Faculties and the Institute.”

Professor Zoliswa Fikelepi-Twani, 2022 HSS Awards Chair Judge: Creative Collections and Digital Humanities Category

“All of us can agree that Prof Ari’s role in establishing the Institute was pivotal. We need to acknowledge the giants among us in ways which would allow others to stand on their shoulders. Prof Ari has both stormed the castles and he has defined the happening, using the latter as a clarion call for the former. Just for that, Prof Ari Sitas deserves recognition and applause as a pioneer in the HSS,” said Prof Hendricks in closing.

### EXPLORING, CELEBRATING AND EXPRESSING IN OUR OWN LANGUAGES

The 2022 HSS Awards attracted a level of language diversity that is simply unparalleled. South African indigenous languages were represented more prominently than in any previous year, a promising sign that the support of the NIHSS is having an effect.

The commitment of the authors themselves to produce their work in isiZulu and isiXhosa, among others, is a vital factor in the drive to promote thought-provoking indigenous literature, said NIHSS CEO Prof Mosoetsa. “A number of indigenous language authors have expressed the utmost determination to see to it that African work is given a place in the sun, both among writers and readers. The NIHSS is proud to be part of this effort.”

As the Institute, we have been particularly humbled at the growth in stature of the Awards. “The number of submissions has grown but so has the quality and this makes us proud of how far

we’ve come over the last seven years. What gives us courage as the Institute is knowing, even despite the inequality and poverty that surrounds us, that the humanities and social sciences help us make sense of and reflect on these complexities and still celebrate who we are as the people of this beautiful continent,” said Prof Mosoetsa.

### AN AWARDS EVENING TO REMEMBER

The chosen venue for the 7<sup>th</sup> HSS Awards was one of the Institute’s Humanities Hubs, the Javett Arts Centre (Javett-UP). Guests, judges, Board members, publishers, members of the media, NIHSS staff and key stakeholders celebrated the winners in the Book, Creative and Digital categories of the coveted HSS Awards.

Officially opened on Heritage Day 2019, Javett-UP is a young and exciting museum that is fast becoming “home to the art of Africa”. It is the setting for countless pan-African artistic practices and is a space that enhances unique multidisciplinary and transdisciplinary learning through the arts, focused on engaging diverse publics through creativity in exploring the human condition and reimagining our futures.

“The centre aims to be an institution that encourages engagement with the ideas, methodologies and concerns of the art of Africa. In this way, the space becomes a platform for education and learning; conversations about creativity and



“The institute is building communities of scholars in the humanities and social sciences and these book Awards live at the very heart of these aims. It pleases me immensely that we’ve been in a position to recognize scholarly work across generations, as we have young authors and more established intellectuals as well, which pleases me very much because you need that interaction between the established scholars and the young ones in order for us to develop a sustainable community of scholarship; the work that we recognise here tonight is ground breaking in crafting new ways for us to appreciate.”

Professor Fred Hendricks, 2022 HSS Awards  
Chair Judge: Non-Fiction Category

innovation, contributing to the discourse on the art of Africa and reflecting upon historical and political events as interpreted by artists,” says Javett-UP CEO, Lekgetho Makola.

### THE MEETING OF SCHOLARSHIP AND CREATIVE WORK

“The entries and winners of the 7th edition of the HSS Awards embody an emergence of new voices, the making of space for fresh or revisited experiences that enrich our field (and therefore humanity) and the inclusion of our histories, her-stories and their-stories previously untold, or told one-sidedly,” remarked NIHSS CEO, Prof Sarah Mosoetsa at the Awards.

“It is important to emphasise that diversity, nuanced-ness and novelty alone will not secure anyone an HSS Award. To be included in our short lists and be recognised among the winners, an author, artist or poet must meet the highest standards of intellectual rigour and have been willing to put in some very hard work. They must also have demonstrated real creative merit and technical dexterity that place them among the foremost creative-intellectuals in HSS scholarship,” she said.

Fiction Chair Judge Ms Malika Ndlovu said that this year’s submissions represented a “literary harvest.”

“As panel Chair, this 2022 NIHSS Fiction award adjudication process was an honour and a pleasure to facilitate once more. The abundance, diversity and quality of this year’s submissions generated excitement and inspiration as each adjudicator shared their individual reading experience over recent months,” she said.

“Simultaneously this presented us with the rigorous work of collective re-evaluation and the inevitable eliminations phase. Our mutual respect for each other’s insights and opinions made for a deeply rewarding and productive process, with debates punctuated by laughter or reflective pauses. There was the cross-referencing of emerging themes, trends and historical tropes or social concerns being grappled with through poetry and the various narrative forms. There were moments of being intellectually stimulated, entertained, disturbed or deeply moved by these works which each adjudicator found some resonance with or where we spontaneously agreed that a work did not come close to the calibre of submissions we narrowed down to as potential winners.”

### AN ESPECIALLY LARGE NUMBER OF POTENTIAL WINNERS

Non-fiction judge Prof Michelle Williams remarked that the 2022 non-fiction book awards were one of the hardest years to adjudicate due to the large number of excellent books submitted.



“What a night! What a ride this 2022 momentous cycle has been and my inspiration well is still overflowing. I value the opportunity to contribute in this way to the profound shifts NIHSS is making in our country’s landscape of academic and creative knowledge production and legacy honouring and preservation.”

Ms Malika Ndlovu, 2022 HSS Awards  
Chair Judge: Fiction Category

“Every year we have excellent books, but this year we had an especially large number of potential winners. South African non-fiction scholarship takes on the critical questions facing humanity and helps us to understand the complex world in which we live. This is testament to the high-calibre scholarship being produced in and about the country and to the quality of the South African academic publishing houses

“Non-fiction academic writing is a long and often lonely process from beginning to end, with little formal recognition within academe and the broader public. The HSS Awards showcase the outstanding scholarship produced in and about South Africa and Africa. Through these awards, the NIHSS provides an enormous contribution to the national dialogue about the importance of the humanities and social sciences for the country as a whole,” said Prof Williams .

Her sentiments were echoed by fiction judge Prof Nompumelelo Zondi: “The overall impression of these submissions suggests that our country will remain literate beyond the times of more seasoned authors who currently carry the mantle of South African literature. Moreover, it was encouraging to witness that a new breed of authors is emerging; something that will ensure continuity even when their veteran counterparts retire their pens,” she said.

## MORE PROMISING YOUNG WRITERS

A number of the judges commented that they had found judging this year’s Awards more interesting than other years, especially because of the number of promising entries by young writers.

Non-fiction judge Prof Sikhumbuzo Mngadi noted that there had been “steady growth in the number of literary works about ‘ordinary’ people in ordinary situations dealing with complex social and personal questions.

“Another aspect of the new writing that featured quite strongly in the 2022 Awards entries was the creative focus on the individual’s search for meaning, while a few of the entries, especially poetry, explored various questions about the nature of the universe and our individual and collective relation to it.

“Something to think about is the creation of a further category for youth fiction, given that the themes that young writers take up and the styles they use often differ quite markedly to those of more established writers. I thought that this might grow the interest in the Awards, by shining significant light on some of the new, youthful voices that are slowly coming through the literary and cultural scene. South African writing is certainly enjoying a golden age and perhaps its future might very well lie in the emerging voices such as youth fiction,” Prof Mngadi said.

# HSS AWARDS WINNERS FOR 2022



Natalia Molebatsi – Best Fiction Edited Volume



Futhi Ntshingila – Best Fiction Novel

## BEST FICTION EDITED VOLUME

Two works shared this award: they are *Wild (Im)perfections: An Anthology of Womanist Poems*, edited by Natalia Molebatsi and published by Penguin Random House South Africa, and *Hauntings*, edited by Niq Mhlongo and published by Jacana Media.

*Wild (Im)perfections* features the works of 40 black women poets from Brazil to Botswana and all their voices, each unique in its own way, sing in one tune like an orchestra. Accepting her award, Natalia Molebatsi said: "I am so grateful to the NIHSS for seeing us; for seeing this work, this poetry and scholarship as a pan-African intellectual project. Thank you for acknowledging this book as a pan-African Feminist and queer intervention as we plough strategies for liberation, for justice and as a new and creative new way of knowing the past, the present and the imaginary."

The *Hauntings* collection is mostly but not entirely about ghosts. The urban legend of Vera the Ghost sets the scene for the recounting of hauntings that pervaded many South African childhoods, from leprechauns, goblins and the Tokoloshe to the theme of looting. This collection shows us that as humans we are always haunted by different things, ranging from greed, cultural beliefs and personal choices to natural disasters. "What

all these stories have in common is some unspoken sense of obligation we have towards one another and an urgent need for closure," says the editor, Niq Mhlongo.

## BEST FICTION NOVEL

Three authors shared this award. They are Futhi Ntshingila for *They Got to You Too*, published by Pan Macmillan South Africa; Mandla Langa for *The Lost Language of the Soul* (also Pan Macmillan) and Ronelda Kamfer for *Kompoun* (Kwela).

"Being awarded the NIHSS novel award for *Kompoun* is an incredible honour, says Ronelda. "When I wrote this book, I was channelling my late mother and grandmother, who were amazing storytellers. So, I feel the acknowledgement of my work is also an acknowledgement of their voices. They were here first. Thank you."

Accepting her award, Futhi commented that the stories she writes do not appeal to everybody. "They are stories that touch on the elephant in the room and stories that make people uncomfortable. I knew as I wrote these stories that I would meet some ridicule and some scorn, but I went ahead because sometimes when you write you become a conduit. I am thankful that I listened to the voices and went with what they wanted me to say."



**Athambile Masola – Best Fiction Poetry**

Mandla Langa's *Lost Language of the Soul* foregrounds the youth, primarily through the 14-year-old protagonist Joseph Mabasa, as ancestral carriers of courage, resilience and a relentless hunger for justice, freedom and the resurrection of African unity. "I want to thank the NIHSS for the role it has played in making sure that it gives these awards. It means a lot that one is being recognised by one's peers. It gives us a lot of inspiration and encouragement to go forward. Thank you, NIHSS, for being the inspiration, the creative crucible, for the amazing work that is happening in the country. Aluta continual!"

### BEST FICTION POETRY

Two black female poets won Best Fiction Poetry awards, Athambile Masola for *Ilifa* and Dimakatso Sedite for *Yellow Shade*.

Athambile's poems in *Ilifa*, published by Uhlanga, are written in isiXhosa – an isiXhosa that is urban, alive and a reflection of the time and place in which we live. The poet's use of imaginative language is exceptional, such as where she switches dialogue from isiXhosa to English and from Sesotho to isiXhosa and back. "Thank you, NIHSS, for helping me celebrate my grandmother," said Athambile, accepting the award. "The book is not about her per se but a lot of it captures who she is and who she was to all of us at home. Thank you for seeing us; thank you for being historic. Thank you, for now we can walk into meetings and show that we have the numbers to say this is also what happens when you write in isiXhosa. Thank you for making us walk a little taller."

Dimakatso's *Yellow Shade* (published by Deep South) is her first poetry collection, is a vivid portrayal of township lives through 44 narrative poems that capture the innate grace and dignity



**Dimakatso Sedite – Best Fiction Poetry**

of ordinary people. "We write poetry so that we don't have to explain, we dare the unspeakable and we try to poetry lives that are so laden in ordinariness that they lose emotion within their honesty, for without honesty there can never be poetry," she said. Dimakatso dedicated her award to her children, for "the hardships they had to put up with, for having a mother who is a writer and to her mother and father. "To my dear parents who are late, I cannot forget the day when my father read my short stories when I was only 10; his face was just beaming with pride, so fathers please be good to your daughters."



**Nthikeng Mohlele – Best Fiction Short Stories**



Pumla Dineo Gqola – Best Non-Fiction Monograph



Thulasizwe Simpson-Best Non-Fiction Monograph

### BEST FICTION SHORT STORIES

Nthikeng Mohlele won this award for his collection of short stories, titled *The Discovery of Love*, published by Jacana Media. Accepting the award, Nthikeng expressed gratitude to those who had taught him about life, the arts and literature. "I've got wonderful colleagues in the field of writing so I think this particular honour to myself in the bigger scheme of things is a representation of the wider canvas and actually the plethora of creative outburst of the work that is being generated. I am fortunate and encouraged that people that I work with seem to understand the same way and I would like to thank everyone who has worked behind the scenes to review and rate the work."

### BEST NON-FICTION EDITED VOLUME

Patricia Hayes and Gary Minkley won this award for *Ambivalent* (Jacana Media), which presents African relationships with photography and with visibility more generally in ways that engage and disrupt the easy categories and genres that have characterised the field to date.

### BEST NON-FICTION EDITED COLLECTION

This award went to Desiree Lewis and Gabeba Baderoon for *Surfacing: On Being Black and Feminist in South Africa* (Wits University Press). Gabeba referred to the award as a tribute to the skill of the collection's authors and a sign of the importance and timeliness of the writing. "The NIHSS teaches scholars, students, teachers, writers, artists and the broader public to cherish the creativity and intellectual depth of scholarship and art emerging from South

Africa. It is truly an honour to be included among this year's award recipients," she said.

### BEST NON-FICTION MONOGRAPH

There were two winners for this, Pumla Dineo Gqola for *Female Fear Factory* and Thulasizwe Simpson for *History of South Africa: From 1902 to the Present*.

Pumla's *Fear Factory* (Melinda Ferguson Books) builds on the coinage of how patriarchal fear is produced publicly in order to maintain compliance for gender-based violence (GBV) from the author's landmark book, *Rape: A South African Nightmare*. "We don't produce for awards and accolades, but it is a singular honour and reward to be recognised by peers and colleagues that you hold in such high regard," Pumla said accepting the award. "Thank you NIHSS and the non-fiction panel of judges. I know how much additional work this has been on top of an additional growing academic load. I am humbled, thank you."

Thulasizwe's book (Penguin Random House) has been lauded for its originality on three accounts. It is based on original research in unexplored archives, offers new interpretations of traditional debates and archives and considers subject matter that has not been explored in any other history of South Africa. "I wish to extend my acknowledgement to the NIHSS which has been supporting me from the days of my research as a catalytic project at the University of Pretoria. I also extend gratitude to my wife who has granted me the opportunity to do what I love on an everyday basis and at whose expense this has been made possible," he said, acknowledging the award.



Coral Bijoux – Best Creative Collection



Aryan Kaganof – Best Humanities Collection

### BEST NON-FICTION BIOGRAPHY

This award went to the late Johnny Clegg for *Scatterling of Africa: My Early Years*. The publishers, Pan Macmillan South Africa, accepted the award on behalf of the Clegg family. “We would like to thank the HSS Awards for this honouring. It has truly been a privilege for us to work on the biography and publish Johnny Clegg’s book and keep his legacy alive.”

### BEST CREATIVE COLLECTION: EXHIBITION CATALOGUE

Coral Bijoux won this award for *Dreams as R-evolution – an artbook*. Accepting the award, she thanked all her peers in the creative community, referring to them as “the people that recognise what it takes to make a creative work and to help it to count for something which is not about the award but about everything else it stands for”. The work is situated within the South African black feminist, socio-political discourse and reaches out to music, poetry, children, life sciences, ecology and philosophy, encouraging a greater humanity within the R-evolutionary idea.

### BEST CREATIVE COLLECTION: PUBLIC PERFORMANCE

Zolani Shangase, Dionne Edith Malan, Michael William Wallace and Seneliso Dladla won this award for *The Sounds of Hlakanyana*, a new South African musical. The digital album retells and reimagines the Zulu folktale Hlakanyana. “We are young creatives and we have been at it since 2017; it’s been a long journey,” said Zolani, accepting the award. “Sometimes there isn’t a text book or a manual and sometimes you can get caught up in the challenges and imposter syndrome kicks in but standing here today we have a community; we have the strongest people, giving people, loving people. If that’s the focus of what you are doing, the work speaks for itself.”



Zolani Shangase – Best Creative Collection: Public Performance



Napjadi Letsoalo – Best Digital Humanities Collection



Vuma Levin – Best Musical Composition

### BEST CREATIVE COLLECTION: VISUAL ART

Wezile Harmans won this award for *Umdiyadiya*, a solo dance installation project that seeks to expose the shifting changes in the lives of human beings. “I believe we all want to be seen and heard... Through my practice, I suggest that existence begins within, the gift of free mind to occupy and provide change that will be inclusive in our surroundings.”

### BEST DIGITAL HUMANITIES: COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

Napjadi Letsoalo won this award for *Mzansi Taal: The South African Taal Dictionary*, a digital resource that is aligned with the nation building and social cohesion objectives of the National Development Plan, the aspirations of the African Union’s Agenda 2063 and the United Nations’ Sustainable Development Goals.

“Thanks to the Institute for supporting the work that we do. I am not a guest; I am a child of this home (NIHSS) and I thank you very much for always supporting us. I would like to thank the institution for creating a space where we can have engaged scholarship and community engagements,” Napjadi said.

### BEST DIGITAL HUMANITIES COLLECTION: VISUALISATION/ INFOGRAPHICS

Filmmaker Aryan Kaganof won this award for *herri*, a new arts and culture e-journal that has been described as “omnivorous”, “provocative” and an “exercise in principled plurality”, among other things.

Explaining the e-journal’s origins, Aryan said: “When I came back to South Africa in 1999, I met Jeff Phakathi, who became my mentor when I met him in this town on a Sunday of the jazz concerts and he said to me: “Gofitlela rebua maleme arona ke se setla re relokelang” (loosely translated as “We need to speak our own languages”). I didn’t know what he meant and when I asked him, he said find out. Jeff has been part of this project with that profound statement.”

### BEST MUSICAL ARRANGEMENT

Vuma Levin won this award for *Antique Spoons: Chapters on Love, Loss and the Politics of Memory*. The critically acclaimed *Antique Spoons* album is Vuma Levin’s fourth as a bandleader and is principally concerned with explicating the post-apartheid South African self through a research-driven approach.

On accepting his award, Vuma Levin said: “I would like to thank my friends and family and band members that helped me produce this album. For the last five years I’ve been working with Wits University and without their support throughout my career I wouldn’t be where I am now. I wouldn’t have a house over my head and thank you to the NIHSS for their continued support of the arts.”



## STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 5



FOSTER INTERNATIONAL RESEARCH  
COLLABORATIONS BETWEEN SOUTH  
AFRICA, AFRICA AND COUNTRIES OF THE  
GLOBAL SOUTH, INCLUDING BRAZIL,  
INDIA AND CHINA

5<sup>th</sup> issue of the BRICS Academic Review

Transnational scholarly engagement and the creation of strong research networks within Africa and the Global South are the key aims of the Institute's African Pathways Programme (APP) mobility grants, BRICS mobility grants and funding for international research collaborations.

One of the most significant achievements was the research outputs the project leaders of the international research collaborations were able to deliver. They produced 21 outputs, compared to the five-output target for the year. These results include the project leaders' considerable contributions to the 13<sup>th</sup> BRICS Academic Forum, which was jointly hosted online by India's Observer Research Foundation (ORF) and Research and Information System for Developing Countries (RIS) from 3 to 6 August 2021.

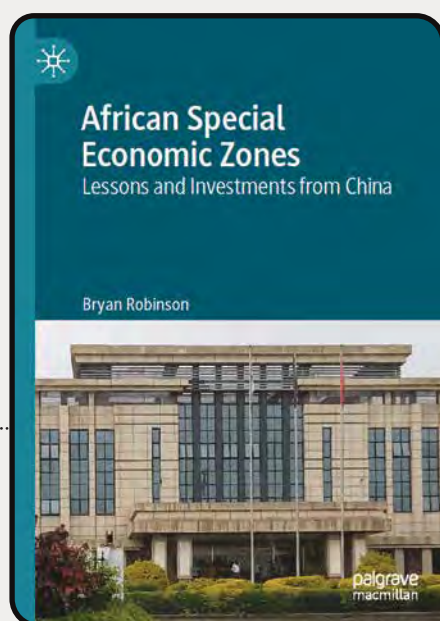
While continuing to monitor projects already being funded, the Institute provided new funding in several categories in 2021/22. This included five new grants for international research collaborations (see Table 8) and 15 new grants for African Pathways Programme and BRICS Mobility Grants (see Table 9). In addition, the NIHSS provided funding for dialogues, colloquiums and policy discussions intended to expand the knowledge base of Global South research and scholarship.

An important funding change made during the year was the introduction of Digital Mobility Grants for the African Pathways Programme and BRICS projects. This change was made to assist project leaders and teams to use virtual modes of project implementation, where necessary, to overcome the limitations placed on physical travel and contact as a result of the pandemic. The digital grants allow project leaders to use both virtual and physical means of implementation to further the progress of their projects.

**Table 8: New international research collaboration projects in 2021/2**

| International research collaboration projects for 2021/22                                                                                           | Research team and institution                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Digital storytelling for navigating trade-offs in conversation                                                                                      | Dr Alta De Vos, Rhodes University                      |
| The colour of inequality in South Africa and Brazil: making sense of transformative social policy                                                   | Dr Madalitso Phiri, University of Johannesburg         |
| Wits-UFRJ research and teaching mobility collaboration                                                                                              | Dr Sibulele Nkunzi, University of the Witwatersrand    |
| Developing bio composite packaging material with essential oils to control the postharvest diseases in different sapota (Manilkara zapota) cultivar | Prof Emmanuel Sadiku, Tshwane University of Technology |
| Decolonising knowledge production and dissemination in a comparative perspective (South Africa and Brazil)                                          | Dr June Bam-Hutchison, University of Cape Town         |

# HIGHLIGHTS FROM 2021/22



The book evaluates African Special Economic Zones from the perspective of learning from China's experience

## PUBLIC TRANSPORT AND BLACK WORKING-CLASS WOMEN: A CRISIS

March 2022 statistics from the National Household Travel Survey (NHTS) in South Africa indicate that the majority of South Africans use minibus taxis to commute to and from their workplaces. Most minibus taxi users are in Gauteng and black working-class women are the biggest category of commuters.

However, research shows that taxis are not necessarily the first choice of black working-class women. Buses and trains are seen as cost-effective but the challenges associated with using these modes of transport are considerable, according to the findings of Singqobile Akin and Andiswa Kona, scholars from Soweto and Orange Farm respectively.

Under the leadership of Dr Mondli Hlatshwayo, Centre for Education Rights and Transformation at the University of Johannesburg, the two scholars investigated the commuting experiences and challenges of 60 black working-class women who rely on taxis.

As part of their research, they compared the experiences of the 60 women with those of other Global South users of a similar mode of transport.

Their study confirmed that trains, buses and taxis are the preferred modes of transport for black women in townships. However, challenges such as overcrowding and delays in trains and buses can make these forms of transport unreliable and unpredictable.

The study also found that black women often have to wake up very early to catch the first bus, train or taxi to get to their workplace. This compromises their safety as they walk long distances to access public transport, increasing their chances of becoming victims of crimes such as pickpocketing, bag snatching and jewellery theft, as well as more serious crimes such as rape, assault and murder.

Adding to the risk of being victimised is the poor state of street lighting and other infrastructure in townships. "I could be walking to get a taxi and someone could be hiding in the bushes and I cannot see them," said one study participant.

The study corroborates other studies indicating that the public transport industry is known for its culture of abuse that places women at risk of violence. When women wait longer to access public transport due to a lack of clear scheduling, they also become vulnerable to gender-based violence (GBV). Other implications of this are the anxiety suffered by these women and the potential loss of employment.

Drawing on technological advancements similar to those seen in cities in Brazil, the study makes various recommendations to the City of Johannesburg metropolitan municipality to improve the safety and reliability of taxi transport. Recommendations include formalising the minibus industry, introducing the taxi driver occupational certificate from the South African Qualifications Authority and giving taxi drivers name tags so that passengers can identify them.

## WHAT AFRICA CAN LEARN FROM CHINA'S SPECIAL ECONOMIC ZONES

In January 2022, after more than two years of travel and research on the African Continent and China, Palgrave Macmillan published a book titled *African Special Economic Zones: Lessons and Investments from China*. This book, penned by Dr Bryan Robinson of Nelson Mandela University, evaluates African Special Economic Zones (SEZs) from the perspective of learning from China's experiences with such Zones and the impact of Chinese policy and investment on African Zones.

The book presents the Chinese SEZ model as an evaluation and benchmarking tool for African SEZs, based on case studies of perceived successful SEZs in China. The book then discusses the competitiveness of African SEZs, with a particular focus on attracting Chinese investors to these Zones. Numerous case studies of African SEZs are used.

### SOCIAL JUSTICE FOR MIGRANT POPULATIONS

As part of the BRICS Cluster II project on migrant populations in certain South African provinces, at least seven PhD students and postdoctoral fellows are gaining invaluable research experience.

The project title is “Militating and mitigating factors for social justice, sustainable development and quality of life of migrant population in selected provinces of South Africa: Implications for policy and practice considerations” and the project leader is Prof Jabulani Makhubele of the Department of Social Work at the University of Limpopo.

As part of their training, the seven young scholars were required to write research-based journal articles for an international audience.

Motshidisi Kwakwa’s article, “Factors influencing gender-based violence against young women migrants in selected provinces of South Africa”, was published in *Gender & Behaviour*, Volume 19. The research findings revealed a lack of social integration, insufficient protection from law enforcement agents and hostile work environments in which migrant women find themselves. These are some of the factors that make these women, already vulnerable because of their often illegal status, even more susceptible to gender-based violence.

The research team recommended the formulation of effective strategies geared towards the protection of all women living in South Africa, including migrants.

### AFRICAN PATHWAYS PROGRAMME AND BRICS MOBILITY GRANTS

As mentioned earlier, the NIHSS introduced digital mobility grants for intra-African and BRICS research during the year. A call for proposals was issued, resulting in 15 grants being awarded.



Global Blackness Summer School 2021

### GLOBAL BLACKNESS SUMMER SCHOOL 2021

The digital mobility initiative of Prof Victoria Collis-Buthelezi of the University of Johannesburg (from a mobility project awarded during the previous 2020/21 financial year) set out to attract a diverse group of academics, activists, artists and everyday people interested in meditating on blackness as a global category of identity and its local manifestations across time and geopolitical locations.

This project took the form of the Global Blackness Summer School 2021, which used interactive modes of technology and created online repositories and archives for the research undertaken.

The project is based within the Humanities Faculty of the University of Johannesburg in the Centre for the Study of Race, Gender & Class, an interdisciplinary, transnational hub for multimodal scholarship, driven by black, African, postcolonial feminist, queer and decolonial agendas of emancipation.

**Table 9: The 15 Digital African Pathways Programme (APP) and BRICS Mobility grant recipients and their areas of study:**

| Digital African Pathways Programme (APP) and BRICS Mobility recipients       | Area of study purpose of the grant                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Dr Eunice Nyamupanedengu, University of the Witwatersrand                    | Travel to the University of Zimbabwe in the Department of Science Design and Technology Education (DSDTE) to understudy their distance learning programme                                           |
| Dr Philani Mthembu, Institute for Global Dialogue (IGD)                      | Conduct fieldwork and co-host several virtual dialogues on the African Union and Southern African Development Community countries                                                                   |
| Mr Cyril Prinsloo, South African Institute for International Affairs (SAIIA) | Co-host several virtual and physical dialogues, for the purposes of research amongst BRICS countries                                                                                                |
| Prof Gilton Klerck, Rhodes University                                        | Travel to Malawi, Mozambique, Uganda, Kenya, Eswatini, Namibia, Zimbabwe and Zambia for research                                                                                                    |
| Prof Megan Campbell, Rhodes University                                       | Travel to Hawassa University, Ethiopia, for research, curriculum development and capacity building                                                                                                  |
| Prof Ibbo Mandaza, Southern Africa Political Economy Series                  | Visit the Wits School of Governance, University of the Witwatersrand, conduct research and deliver guest lectures                                                                                   |
| Prof Mulugeta Dinbabo, University of the Western Cape                        | Travel to Addis Ababa University, Ethiopia, for research and co-curriculum development                                                                                                              |
| Prof Yusuf Sayed, Cape Peninsula University of Technology                    | Build and support digital teaching and learning exchanges between the Tata Institute of Social sciences (TISS) in India and South Africa for research, curriculum development and capacity building |
| Dr Megan Jones, Stellenbosch University                                      | Collaborate on research with the SNDY Women's University, Mumbai, India                                                                                                                             |
| Dr Sazi Dlamini, University of KwaZulu-Natal                                 | Travel to Delhi, India (Ambedkar University) for research                                                                                                                                           |
| Dr Sheetal Bhoola, University of Zululand                                    | Collaborate on research with the Central University of Kerala, Kerala, India                                                                                                                        |
| Dr Zukiswa Roboji, Walter Sisulu University                                  | Travel to Gweru, Zimbabwe (Midlands State University) for research                                                                                                                                  |
| Mr Mikatekiso Kubayi, University of Johannesburg                             | Travel to Brazil, Russia, India and China for research                                                                                                                                              |
| Prof Lesetja Motadi, University of Johannesburg                              | Travel to Accra, Ghana (University of Ghana) for research                                                                                                                                           |
| Prof Tandia Chimucheka, University of Fort Hare                              | Travel to Bindura, Zimbabwe (Zimbabwe Ezekiel Guti University) for research                                                                                                                         |



### SHARING RESEARCH THROUGH SCHOLARLY ENGAGEMENTS

During the year, the NIHSS, the South African BRICS Think Tank and project leaders held dialogues, colloquiums and policy discussions to expand the knowledge base of Global South research and scholarship.

Among the engagements was a virtual webinar on “BRICS and IBSA: Reflections on Recent Academic Forums”, on 26 October 2021. This engagement sought to compare the gains made by the two multilateral blocs.

In the context of the African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA) Agreement, scholars engaged with each other on what the agreement means for all involved and for those still considering participating in the agreement. To facilitate this dialogue, a closed workshop titled “Towards a Southern African integration” was co-hosted virtually on 7 December 2021 by the Institute for Global Dialogue and the SABTT.

In addition, on 27 January 2022, the SABTT hosted a virtual dialogue titled “China’s BRICS Presidency 2022 – Key priorities and opportunities.” The keynote speaker was Minister Li Zhigang of the Embassy of the People’s Republic of China to South Africa. Other speakers were Dr Shen Yi from the China Council for BRICS Think Tank Cooperation, Fudan University and Dr David Monyae from the Centre for Africa-China Studies, University of Johannesburg.

SABTT hosted an online dialogue on China’s BRICS Presidency 2022 – Key priorities and opportunities

A critical takeaway from this event was gaining an understanding of the foundations for China’s foreign policy, the principles that guide China and areas of mutual concern and interest to China and its BRICS partners. Identifying further opportunities for bilateral cooperation between China and South Africa, as well as nodes of growth for intra-BRICS cooperation and deeper integration, is essential.

This dialogue also reflected Chinese discourse on the current global economic climate and more importantly, shared insights that would be of use to policymakers, researchers, students and interested citizens.

#### Other key engagements:

- At an event held on 23 February 2022, the SABTT and the South African Institute for International Affairs (SAIIA) co-hosted a dialogue titled “South Africa and the BRICS: revisiting development priorities.” The virtual dialogue was facilitated by SAIIA’s Senior Researcher Mr Cyril Prinsloo, as part of an NIHSS-funded project.
- On 23 March 2022, the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) and the SABTT co-hosted a symposium titled “Renewable energy promotion in BRICS cities: generating opportunities for economic development”.



## STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 6



ACT AS A DYNAMIC KNOWLEDGE  
BROKER BETWEEN THE WORLDS OF  
KNOWLEDGE AND POLICY ACTION ON  
BEHALF OF SOUTH AFRICA AS THE  
SOUTH AFRICAN BRICS THINK TANK



**Minister Dr Bonginkosi 'Blade' Nzimande and Prof Tulio de Oliveira on a walkabout of the NantSA Vaccine Manufacturing Campus in Brackenfell, Cape Town**

In academic circles, an almost universal challenge is translating knowledge into policy action, the main reason being that the scholars who generate knowledge do not necessarily have access to those able to implement it. When they are fortunate enough to have such access, it is critical for them to be able to communicate the essence of their research findings and policy recommendations in ways that resonate with policy-makers by demonstrating their practical applicability in real-life settings.

As the custodian of the South African BRICS Think Tank (SABTT), the Institute is part of the BRICS academic infrastructure whose work informs the policy directions and decisions made when the BRICS heads of state meet at the annual BRICS summit.

This is not to say that the BRICS leaders will always accept the recommendations and findings presented to them from the academic structures within BRICS (chiefly the BRICS Think Tank Council, comprising the five member states' think tanks, which gather at the annual Academic Forum to prepare policy recommendations for the leaders' summits). However, there have been a number of instances where recommendations made at BRICS Academic Forums have been implemented in practice.

An example of which the NIHSS is extremely proud is the launch in March 2022 of the BRICS Vaccine Research and Development Centre initiative, taking the form of an internet-based virtual centre linking up with a national centre in each of the five BRICS countries, enabling them to share best practices and cooperate

in the research, development, production and distribution of vaccines.

It was South Africa that first proposed the creation of such a centre. That proposal was put forward in 2018 when the country held the BRICS Chairship and hosted both the leaders' summit and the BRICS Academic Forum.

"We are grateful for the subsequent support and efforts of the Brazilian, Russian and Indian Chairs, which ensured progress in taking forward this commitment. I would also like to pay tribute to and express our appreciation to Minister Wang and the People's Republic of China for the decisive leadership during China's Chairship, which resulted in our readiness to celebrate the launch of the initiative today," said Dr Bonginkosi "Blade" Nzimande, Minister of Higher Education, Science and innovation, during the virtual launch of the centre.

While it may take several years for policy proposals shaped at BRICS academic events to come to fruition, it is encouraging that when they do, they may be of significance not just to the member states of the BRICS, but to the Global South at large.

It is vital to acknowledge the contribution of the scholars behind the recommendations that eventually make their way to the leaders of BRICS. These recommendations would never come to life were it not for the myriad of academic initiatives behind them, particularly the BRICS Cluster Projects and the seminars,

**Table 10: BRICS Cluster Projects monitored in 2021/22**

| Cluster Project leaders                        | Institutions                    | Project Titles                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Prof Tholene Sodi</b>                       | University of Limpopo           | Improving mental health literacy among secondary school learners in South Africa for better quality of life                                                                                                        |
| <b>Prof Jabulani Makhubele</b>                 | University of Limpopo           | Militating and mitigating factors for Social justice, sustainable development and quality of life of migrant population in selected provinces of South Africa: Implications for policy and practice considerations |
| <b>Dr Thabisile Buthelezi</b>                  | University of KwaZulu-Natal     | Multicultural and Multilingual Education Practices, Programmes and Policies towards Social Justice Education in Curriculum Delivery: Drawing Parallels between South Africa and Brazil Education Systems           |
| <b>Prof Ronney Ncwadi</b>                      | Nelson Mandela University       | Developing a BRICS multilateral regional economic integration index to monitor trade and investment via central Banking digital currencies.                                                                        |
| <b>Prof Fulufhelo Netswera</b>                 | Durban University of Technology | The Dynamic Linkages between Entrepreneurship, Agriculture and Climate change in post COVID-19 BRICS                                                                                                               |
| <b>Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane</b>              | University of Venda             | BRICS Seminal Activity to Inform Research on Governance Landscape of the State-Owned Entities (SOEs) and New Development Bank (NDB) – A Comparative Perspective within the BRICS Member States                     |
| <b>Prof Nirmala Gopal</b>                      | University of KwaZulu- Natal    | Assessing the Impact of Cybersecurity on South Africa's Peace and National Security                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Prof Brett Pyper</b>                        | University of the Witwatersrand | Arts, Culture and Heritage and/as knowledge production                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Prof Quentin Williams</b>                   | University of the Western Cape  | Multilingualism, Linguistic Citizenship and Vulnerability: a comparative focus on South Africa and Brazil                                                                                                          |
| <b>Dr Samuel Koma and Dr Onkgopotse Madumo</b> | University of Pretoria          | Promoting Intra-BRICS Cooperation for Economic Growth and Development Through Lessons on Public-Private Partnerships                                                                                               |
| <b>Dr Sibongile Tshabalala</b>                 | University of Zululand          | BRICS from Below: Inclusive Approaches to Sustaining Livelihoods and the Environment Amidst Climate Change Impact In BRICS Countries                                                                               |
| <b>Mr Krish Chetty</b>                         | Human Sciences Research Council | Assessing the Effectiveness of Climate Finance in BRICS Cities                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Mr Ashraf Patel</b>                         | Institute for Global Dialogue   | An Inclusive, Developmental 4IR in SA, Africa and BRICS                                                                                                                                                            |

workshops and conferences hosted to share research findings and prepare for the annual Academic Forum.

The Institute gratefully expresses appreciation for the contribution that South African scholars made in 2021/22 to the work of the SABTT. In particular, we thank the project leaders of the 13 BRICS Cluster Projects, the organisers of the 12 seminars, workshops and conferences hosted during the year and the members of the SABTT Secretariat and the SABTT Advisory Committee, who held South Africa's head high at the 2021 Academic Forum, hosted virtually by India.

### **BRICS CLUSTER II PROJECTS PRODUCE POLICY-RELEVANT RESEARCH**

Research done under the banner of BRICS Cluster Projects has very clear and precise aims: to produce policy-relevant research in the BRICS domain.

This means such research should, ultimately, inform the policy recommendations that emanate from the BRICS Think

Tank Council and should focus on the Council's long-term research strategy. This strategy comprises five pillars, which are cooperation for growth and development; political and economic governance; social justice, sustainable development and quality of life; peace and security; and progress through sharing knowledge and innovation.

In turn, the NIHSS has created nine BRICS Clusters, which are aligned with the broad themes of the BRICS Think Tank Council. The Clusters are networks of academics at various universities across South Africa, who collaborate to produce policy-relevant research on an annual basis, prioritising topics such as rural poverty, health, rural sanitation, language and literature and identity.

As the first cycle of BRICS Cluster Projects ran from 2015 to March 2020, the Institute entered its second cycle in 2021/22, dubbed "BRICS Cluster II".

In the financial year 2021/22, the Institute monitored 13 BRICS Cluster Projects, led by the project leaders listed in table 10.



Front row: Mr Krish Chetty, HSRC (left) and Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane, UNIVEN (right) with Cluster members and NIHSS staff

## GENERATING ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT FROM RENEWABLE ENERGY: A CITY-LEVEL COMPARISON OF CHINA AND SOUTH AFRICA

**Project leader: Mr Krish Chetty, Human Sciences Research Council**

This project was a city-level comparison of China and South Africa, building on its previous contributions that have studied the impact cities are making in addressing the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change commitments needed to respond to climate change.

The project provides an in-depth analysis of urban policies and local government action in four case study cities in South Africa and China: Cape Town, Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Area, Beijing and Shenzhen.

The multi-disciplinary project was implemented in phases and encompassed qualitative and quantitative research methods.

The starting point was a literature and policy review, followed by key informant focus group discussions with South African participants. In addition, a policy workshop was held with the South African participants to clarify the key points of view gathered during the earlier discussions and a quantitative econometric analysis was conducted of South African renewable energy trade, economic growth and emissions data.

To gather views from China, the research team gathered key documents that outlined the experiences from Beijing and Shenzhen, describing how renewable energy projects have contributed to economic development.

## DISAGGREGATING BRICS SOEs: GOVERNANCE AND DEVELOPMENTAL GROWTH

**Project leader: Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane, University of Venda**

Across the world, state-owned enterprises (SOEs) are important economic drivers in several significant economies, contributing to gross domestic product and delivering many social goods and services to ensure a better quality of life for all. That said, many SOEs experience governance failures, hampering their ability to fulfil their developmental mandates.

In April and July 2021, Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane and the team conducted two webinars to explore solutions to the challenges facing SOEs in BRICS countries.

The first webinar, “Disaggregating BRICS SOEs: governance and developmental growth”, explored political and economic issues and SOE reforms undertaken to improve their capacity to address their countries’ socio-economic needs and those of the BRICS community in general.

Some of the challenges raised during this webinar were poor accountability of SOEs, political interference, lack of oversight, patronage networks and organisational inefficiencies and a lack of performance-based incentives. Professor W Gumede of Wits University said poor performance often goes unpunished, although there are exceptions. In China, senior executive officers and board members of SOEs had their salaries cut during lean times and no bonuses are paid out if SOEs fail to deliver on their mandates.



Professor Nirmala Gopal, UKZN, with mentors and mentees at a writing retreat

The second webinar, held on 7 July 2021, was on “BRICS bank finance – Development in the post-Covid-19 era for the Global South”. It focused on the establishment of the BRICS New Development Bank, which represents an international mechanism of innovation in the field of international development financing. Experts from all the BRICS nations attended the webinar and explored the role and responsibilities of the various financial institutions in assisting the BRICS bloc, including the recently established New Development Bank (NDB).

The project produced a number of other outputs in 2021/22, including a policy brief on how the NDB could be mobilised to finance SDGs, along with two journal articles and three book chapters.

### DISCUSSION AND DEBATE GENERATE ACTIONABLE IDEAS

Key to acting as a dynamic broker in knowledge production and policy action are the opportunities offered to scholars to meet and discuss ideas, present findings, network and form collaborations. In the 2021/22 financial year, Cluster Project leaders were expected to host at least nine workshops, seminars and conferences and succeeded in hosting 12.

Whether held in person or virtually, these academic events were well attended, bringing together experts from most – and sometimes all – the BRICS countries. They were also opportunities for researchers from a diverse array of South African universities and research agencies to gather.

- Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane of UNIVEN hosted a public webinar titled “Disaggregating BRICS SOEs: Governance and Developmental Growth” on 20 April 2021.
- Dr Mondli Hlatshwayo of the University of Johannesburg hosted a public webinar titled “Black working-class women and the crisis of public transport in Soweto and Orange Farm”. The event was held on 23 April 2021.
- Prof Nirmala Gopal, of the University of KwaZulu-Natal, hosted a writing retreat for postgraduate students from 23 to 26 June 2021.
- An online seminar titled “BRICS Bank Finance - Development in the post-Covid-19 era for the Global South” was hosted by Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane from the HSRC on 7 July 2021.
- Prof Christopher Isike of the University of Pretoria hosted a Scientific Writing Seminar for Beginners, on Research Methodology in Social and Political Sciences, at the Universidade Eduardo Mondlane, Mozambique on 23 August 2021.
- A webinar on the topic “Haiti and Its publics”, convened as part of the webinar series under the theme “Race, imperialism and the making of black subjects”, was hosted by Prof Victoria Collis-Buthelezi, of the University of Johannesburg, on 7 September 2021.
- A hybrid postgraduate workshop titled “Decolonial research methods in the humanities” was hosted by Dr Jonathan Okeke of the University of Pretoria from 23-25 September 2021.

**Table 11: The South African delegates participated in the 2021 BRICS Academic Forum panel discussions as per the table below:**

| Speaker and institution                                                                        | Topic                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Prof Siphamandla Zondi, SABTT Chairperson                                                      | Post-pandemic world order: Challenges and opportunities for BRICS                  |
| Prof Sarah Mosoetsa, CEO, NIHSS                                                                | BRICS agenda for women's leadership and women-led economic growth                  |
| Mr Krish Chetty, Chief Researcher, HSRC                                                        | BRICS framework for green energy                                                   |
| Dr Thokozani Simelane, Director of Research, Africa Institute of South Africa (AISA)           | Sustainable lifestyles: Rethinking consumption (the forgotten SDG)                 |
| Prof Nirmala Gopal, Department of Criminology and Forensic Studies, UKZN                       | Building a BRICS consensus on counter-terrorism                                    |
| Dr Aquina Thulare, Senior Advisor, National Department of Health                               | BRICS and the global health agenda                                                 |
| Mr Cyril Prinsloo, Senior Researcher, South African Institute of International Affairs (SAIIA) | BRICS agenda for trade and resilient supply chains                                 |
| Prof Modimowabarwa Kanyane, Dean: Faculty of Humanities, UNIVEN                                | Mobilising the New Development Bank for financing SDGs                             |
| Mr Ashraf Patel, Researcher, Institute for Global Dialogue                                     | BRICS framework on digital public goods: Health, education and financial inclusion |
| Dr Kagiso Pooe, Senior Lecturer, Wits University                                               | BRICS and global economic recovery                                                 |
| Ms Romy Chevallier, Senior Researcher, SAIIA                                                   | Road to COP26: BRICS climate change agenda                                         |
| Mr Njabulo Sithebe, Senior Researcher, National Department of Tourism                          | Building a post-pandemic workforce: An agenda for jobs                             |
| Dr Philani Mthembu, Executive Director, Institute for Global Dialogue                          | Towards a reformed multilateralism                                                 |

- The Second Virtual Workshop from their Global Blackness Summer School, titled "Imagine there's no world: queer transections of Afrofuturism and critical fabulation", was hosted by Prof Victoria Collis-Buthelezi of the University of Johannesburg on 17 November 2021.
- A webinar titled "Leaving No Child Behind: Decomposing Socioeconomic Inequalities in Child Health for India and South Africa" was hosted by Prof Charles Hongoro of Tshwane University of Technology on 17 November 2021.
- A webinar titled "BRICS and IBSA: Reflections on Recent Academic Forums" was hosted by the SABTT Chairperson, Prof Siphamandla Zondi, on 26 October 2021.
- On 9 December 2021, Prof Victoria Collis-Buthelezi of the University of Johannesburg hosted a third session of the Global Blackness Summer School webinar.
- On 26 January 2022, the SABTT and the HSRC's Mr Krish Chetty co-hosted a closed workshop, titled "Working Group Dialogue: socio-economic opportunities from renewable energy projects at a city level."

## REPRESENTING SOUTH AFRICA AT THE 13TH BRICS ACADEMIC FORUM

The Covid-19 pandemic has exposed the shifting and often unstable dynamics in international relations. A new imperative has emerged for global governance, which has seen all nations reconfigure their priorities and partnerships, the BRICS nations included. This has also been a time for the BRICS as a bloc to consider its positioning within the international system and explore how it can contribute to the shaping of the emerging world order.

Through its role as custodian of the South African BRICS Think Tank (SABTT), the Institute has been participating in proposing policy direction and action that would support post-pandemic economic recovery, sustainable development and resilient energy and health systems among the BRICS and developing countries generally.

This emphasis was reflected in the discussion topics at the 2021 BRICS Academic Forum, hosted by India from 3 to 6 August 2021 under the theme "BRICS@15: Intra-BRICS cooperation for continuity, consolidation and consensus".



Dr Radhicka Kapoor participating in the BRICS Academic Forum. Right: Dr Marcela Torres Rezende (Brazil), Dr Victoria Panova (Russia), Prof Wu Huifang (China), Prof Sarah Moseetsa (South Africa) and Ms Lalitha Kumaramangalam (India)

## POST-PANDEMIC WORLD ORDER: CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES FOR BRICS

The 13<sup>th</sup> BRICS Academic Forum, held virtually, commenced with a panel examining the transformations in geopolitics and geoeconomics and exploring what BRICS can do to shape the emerging world order.

SABTT Chairperson Prof Siphamandla Zondi reflected on the challenges faced by nations within the BRICS and pointed out that there was a pressing need to reinforce and rebuild representative multilateralism.

“We need to reinforce and deepen economic integration and finance sustainable development projects. The generational gap and the effect of unemployment is high and there is the persistent threat that developing countries will be left behind because of these factors. We also cannot dismiss the threat and impact of real-time public opinion on the BRICS. Working in silos has led many countries to think that they are saving the world while saving the problem within their national borders,” said Prof Zondi.

“There is no agenda to save all, hence the pressing need for more inclusive decision making and exercising a more just judgment of power that boosts economic development and sustainable development that improves the lives of ordinary people. It is time to intensify the push for reforms, solidarity and cooperation as a principle,” he remarked.

To address these challenges, he proposed interventions such as strengthening multilateralism, evolving a world order that sustains consumption and production, strengthening solidarity within the BRICS, encouraging more cultural exchanges among the BRICS think tanks, avoiding setbacks brought about by globalisation and fragmentation, enhancing cooperation on public health and improving technological learning and exploring new developments to match the new digital world.

## BRICS AGENDA FOR WOMEN'S LEADERSHIP AND WOMEN-LED ECONOMIC GROWTH

This panel discussion was a response to the significant challenges confronting women as a result of the Covid-19 pandemic, from women's weakened participation in the labour force to the escalation in unpaid work as carers.

The panel examined the post-pandemic policy, business and socio-economic landscape for women and explored how BRICS can support women-led economic growth. The panellists proposed the establishment of a policy for labour-related care for women and a social security grant for women's unpaid work, particularly given that the pandemic had disproportionately and negatively impacted on women's ability to be socially and economically active.

The discussion highlighted the importance of greater public safety of women and increased digitisation in social security as key focus areas for post-pandemic recovery.

The panel supported Dr Victoria Panova, Vice-President for International Relations in Russia, in suggesting the development of a toolkit for women's empowerment and the strengthening of the role of the BRICS Women's Federation. Prof Sarah Mosoetsa, CEO of South Africa's NIHSS, suggested increased gender mainstreaming and equal education, particularly for the youth.

The panel also agreed that it was important that BRICS countries share successful initiatives to boost cooperation and knowledge sharing and for the BRICS to become better allies and co-collaborators.

In essence, the panel members argued that the BRICS needed a social-cultural rethink that placed women at the centre of post-pandemic economic recovery.

#### **BRICS FRAMEWORK FOR GREEN ENERGY**

This panel examined the latest developments in green energy and explored how BRICS can cooperate on green energy investments, research and development, financing, regulations and technology.

The panel recommended that the BRICS Energy Research Cooperation Platform be expanded to include Renewable Energy Associations, local governments and academic institutions. It also suggested that International Relations ministries should engage their Consulate Offices to identify strategic partners via Renewable Energy Associations, while promoting more dialogue through exchange programmes.

An appeal was made to the BRICS New Development Bank to make funds available for establishing knowledge partnerships to be accessed via Consulate Offices.

#### **SUSTAINABLE LIFESTYLES: RETHINKING CONSUMPTION (THE FORGOTTEN SDG)**

The need to balance limited natural resources with consumption-led growth is the biggest challenge facing the 2030 Development Agenda. The panel on creating and promoting more sustainable lifestyles explored how the BRICS grouping can reimagine consumption patterns and align them with the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). The economy, the environment and energy were three critical issues that the

panel discussed as the "forgotten" SDGs are of critical importance for the BRICS to investigate.

In China, the beauty and transportation sector has started developing by subsidising these sectors. Electronic vehicle deployment is a major focus. The panel heard that shared mobility was one of the ways to preserve the environment and minimise living costs.

Energy efficiency is vital for developing countries and research has shown that exploring energy potential will improve energy production. The panel agreed that the BRICS countries need to create a balance between sustainable consumption and lifestyle – and the need to move from fossil fuels to renewable energy is more pressing than ever.

With the challenge of an ever-growing worldwide population, regulation in agricultural production needs to be developed to ensure food security. There was also consensus that the transition to a greener world need not be abrupt and BRICS needs to appreciate and formulate policy and systems for recycling.

#### **BUILDING A BRICS CONSENSUS ON COUNTER-TERRORISM**

The threats from terrorism and violent extremism continue to pose diverse and complex international peace and stability challenges. This session on counter-terrorism explored how the BRICS nations can cooperate to counter terrorism and promote international peace and security.

One of the challenges that were noted during this panel is the lack of mutual trust among the BRICS countries, which have different priorities and strategies, resulting in geographical dissonance and perceptions towards global threats.

Geopolitics is another security challenge for BRICS and the internet was noted as a significant channel for terrorist mobilisation.

The role of youth in achieving peace was noted as vital as agents of peace, security and anti-radicalisation. More work needs to be done to ensure that youth are included in decision-making processes and structures and that they engage in dialogues concerning them.



Dr Aquina Thulare (South Africa), presenting at the BRICS Academic Forum, (Right) Dr Luciana Mendes Santos Servo (Brazil), Ms. Ekaterina Kheifets (Russia), Dr Qi Xiaopeng (China), Prof Ritupriya Mehrotra (India)

There was agreement from the panel that all states need to adopt a common terrorism strategy and collaborate on security issues in the global landscape.

### BRICS AND THE GLOBAL HEALTH AGENDA

The Covid-19 pandemic has highlighted the urgency of reviewing the global healthcare agenda, including pandemic preparedness, international cooperation, vaccine development processes, global healthcare regulations, pharmaceutical supply chains, citizen awareness and local capacities.

The panel reviewed the lessons from Covid-19 and explored measures that the BRICS can take to improve healthcare delivery.

Panellists noted that the pandemic has placed added pressure on the demand for medication, while the Covid-19 vaccine rollout has been a challenge for most countries as a result of vaccine hesitancy, vaccine nationalism, vaccine protectionism, vaccine side effects and concerns around equitable distribution.

It was proposed and supported that BRICS needed to increase investments in scientific research, develop infrastructure, look at best practices and adapt in order to establish BRICS vaccine research and development centres.

An important part of this process is building resilient digital systems that would help sequence new variants as early as possible. Each member state should commit to building public trust and confidence by following a bottom-up approach to development that recognises the role of civil society

organisations. BRICS countries should seek feedback from the communities they serve and follow through on resolutions that have been made previously.

### BRICS AGENDA FOR TRADE AND RESILIENT SUPPLY CHAINS

This panel examined the implications of the Covid-19 pandemic on trade, particularly on global supply chains and explored how BRICS countries can cooperate to reduce disruptions and streamline regulations for trade in goods and services.

The panel suggested there was a need for more exchange of statistical data and greater emphasis on leveraging the strategy for the 2025 BRICS Economic Partnership. This strategy, which was adopted by the BRICS summit in November 2020, defines a development path for the BRICS and sets a framework for cooperation among its members.

The panel agreed to facilitate cooperation among stakeholders, including agencies, business associations, youth, women, elderly people and people with disabilities to prepare joint proposals and pilot projects and exchange best practices and experience.

### MOBILISING THE NDB FOR FINANCING SDGS

This panel examined the progress made in financing initiatives around the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and explored how the BRICS New Development Bank (NDB) can galvanise financing for the member nations to achieve SDGs.

Informed by impact evaluation studies, the panel suggested that the NDB and multilateral banks should align their strategies and business models to finance SDG-related infrastructure. The NDB should be committed to transforming investment behaviour and encouraging sustainable investments that promote stronger economic recovery over and above providing loans and green bonds.

It was suggested that, going forward, the BRICS countries should adopt a bottom-up grassroots approach and revise their national plans by linking them to the SDGs to mobilise funding support from the NDB.

Furthermore and in accordance with the SDGs, governments should translate their national strategies into concrete policy actions and expenditure plans that are incorporated into the national budget and planning processes.

#### **BRICS FRAMEWORK ON DIGITAL PUBLIC GOODS: HEALTH, EDUCATION AND FINANCIAL INCLUSION**

The Covid-19 pandemic has highlighted the value of digital solutions in responding to global challenges swiftly. The panel examined developments in digital public goods and explored measures that the BRICS countries can take to support their deployment, bearing in mind the challenges in accessibility and availability in infrastructure and governance. Intellectual property rights were also pointed out as a persistent challenge in the BRICS.

There was consensus on the importance of establishing joint standards for digital development. It was suggested, for example, that the BRICS needed to formulate a public policy to make internet access equitable and inclusive (especially for people in remote areas), adapt available internet at low cost and create a unified market to reduce the cost of digital goods.

The panel agreed and recommended that digital goods should be mainstreamed and that the BRICS Think Tanks should be fully financed by the BRICS NDB to undertake digital research, monitoring and impact evaluation activities.

#### **BRICS AND GLOBAL ECONOMIC RECOVERY**

The panel on global economic recovery examined the success of multilateral financial institutions' efforts to assist economies most in need of help and explored measures that BRICS countries can take to revive their respective nations and the global economy.

The panel noted that there is much talk about decreasing the value chain, bringing back home the parts of the supply in Europe and America and replacing imports with domestic alternatives.

Economic and exchange rate inequalities were also noted as challenges in the recovery of the world's global economy.

The panel encouraged the NDB to be strategic with investment in the different sectors and the development of a common agenda for emerging markets. Global governance and global supply chains should be revisited, with more investment needed in education, agriculture and research.

Monitoring and the development of fiscal policy are key in working toward stabilising international financial systems.

#### **BUILDING A POST-PANDEMIC WORKFORCE: AN AGENDA FOR JOBS**

This session on building a post-pandemic workforce discussed how social safety and protection can be ensured even as the nature of work increasingly takes on more informal characteristics.

The panel explored the new models of education and skilling that are required to equip the present and future workforces and looked to best practices among the BRICS nations that can be further adapted and adopted. The session placed emphasis on how the future of work can be made more inclusive, ensuring 20<sup>th</sup> century inequities are not replicated in the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

This panel examined the implications of the Covid-19 pandemic on the nature and availability of jobs and explored how BRICS can cooperate to develop a workforce for the future. As a matter of urgency, financial support mechanisms should be explored to expand opportunities for more work-based learning.

Greater collaboration on updating existing higher learning programmes is needed, along with the design of mutually recognised short skills development programmes and amending of funding and quality assurance mechanisms.



# SECTION C

## HUMAN RESOURCES AND ADMINISTRATION



NIHSS staff at the  
Humanities and Social  
Sciences Awards 2022

The NIHSS's staff complement stood at 31 as at 31 March 2022, an increase from the previous year's 27 employees. The overall staff turnover was 24%.

### STAFF TRAINING AND DEVELOPMENT

In total, the Institute invested R662 839 in staff training and development in 2021/22, equating to 2.82% of total expenditure. This was slightly lower than the previous year's training expenditure of R833 830, which amounted to 3.68% of total expenditure.

This investment included the awarding of 19 bursaries to staff members to allow them to further their studies part time. The emphasis was on academic programmes that contribute directly to the service line, area of specialisation and current responsibilities of employees, as well as any future responsibilities that have been identified.

Senior management continued with their executive coaching sessions and participated in workshops to capacitate them to protect the organisation from cybercrime and to understand the risks thereof.

### OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

During 2021/22, management implemented processes and procedures to reduce the risk of Covid-19 infections among staff members. Adequate ICT and finance resources were also advanced to support staff members during the lockdown period.

We continued to strengthen our general compliance on health and safety in the year under review. As a result, the NIHSS once again received a letter of good standing from the Department of Labour acknowledging full compliance with the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 130 of 1993 (COIDA).

The beginning of the 2021/22 financial year saw the full return to work of all NIHSS staff. Undeniably, Covid-19 has changed the way we live, think and behave and adapting to the new normal has not been easy. As national restrictions on nearly all economic and social activity continued to be lifted; the Human Resources, Legal and IT divisions worked together to help employees manage their anxieties and stress around Covid-19.

It is further testimony to the calibre and commitment of the Institute's management and staff that, in the face of the devastation caused by the Covid-19 pandemic, the work of the NIHSS proceeded and most of the set targets were met or exceeded. Employees demonstrated their ability to adjust and adapt, ensuring that both day-to-day and strategic activities continued and that our PhD students and research partners could rely on high levels of support. This reflects the high-performance culture within the organisation, the well-rounded skills and competencies of the NIHSS team and the above-average investment made in training and development, working out at R16 996 per employee for the year under review.

## HUMAN RESOURCES OVERSIGHT STATISTICS

Table 12: 2021/22 personnel cost per salary band

| Level                                         | Personnel expenditure (R) | Personnel expenditure as % of personnel cost | Number of employees | Average cost per employee (R) |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Top management                                | 5 331 280                 | 23%                                          | 2                   | 2 665 640                     |
| Senior management                             | 1 398 485                 | 6%                                           | 2                   | 699 243                       |
| Professionally qualified                      | 3 297 649                 | 14%                                          | 4                   | 824 412                       |
| Skilled, technical and academically qualified | 8 494 471                 | 36%                                          | 17                  | 499 675                       |
| Semi-skilled                                  | 4 463 353                 | 19%                                          | 11                  | 405 759                       |
| Unskilled                                     | 523 367                   | 2%                                           | 3                   | 174 456                       |
| <b>Total</b>                                  | <b>23 508 605</b>         | <b>100%</b>                                  | <b>39*</b>          | <b>55 269 185</b>             |

(R) \* This number includes staff members who have left the organisation but were paid during their tenure.

Table 13: 2021/22 staff training expenditure

| Programme      | Total expenditure | Staff training expenditure | As % of total expenditure | Number of employees | Average cost per employee |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Staff training | 23 508 605        | 662 839                    | 2.81%                     | 39*                 | 16 996                    |

Table 14: Employment and vacancies as at 31 March 2022

| Level                    | 2021/22 approved posts | 2021/22 number of employees | 2021/22 vacancies | % of vacancies |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Top management           | 2                      | 2                           | 0                 | 0.00%          |
| Senior management        | 6                      | 1                           | 5                 | 83.33%         |
| Professionally qualified | 9                      | 3                           | 6                 | 66.67%         |
| Skilled                  | 12                     | 14                          | -2                | -16.67%        |
| Semi-skilled             | 8                      | 8                           | 0                 | 0.00%          |
| Unskilled                | 3                      | 3                           | 0                 | 0.00%          |
| <b>Total</b>             | <b>40</b>              | <b>31</b>                   | <b>9</b>          | <b>22.50%</b>  |

**Table 15: Employment changes during 2021/22**

| Level                    | Employment at 31 March 2021 | Appointments | Terminations | Employment at 31 March 2022 |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| Top management           | 2                           | 0            | 0            | 2                           |
| Senior management        | 2                           | 0            | 1            | 1                           |
| Professionally qualified | 4                           | 0            | 0            | 4                           |
| Skilled                  | 11                          | 6            | 3            | 14                          |
| Semi-skilled             | 7                           | 3            | 3            | 7                           |
| Unskilled                | 1                           | 2            | 0            | 3                           |
| <b>Total</b>             | <b>27</b>                   | <b>11</b>    | <b>7</b>     | <b>31</b>                   |

**Table 16: Reasons for employee turnover for the 2021/22 financial year**

| Reasons              | Employment at 31 March 2022 |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Dismissals           | 0                           |
| Contract non-renewal | 3                           |
| Resignations         | 4                           |
| <b>Total</b>         | <b>7</b>                    |

**Table 17: Labour relations: Misconduct and disciplinary action**

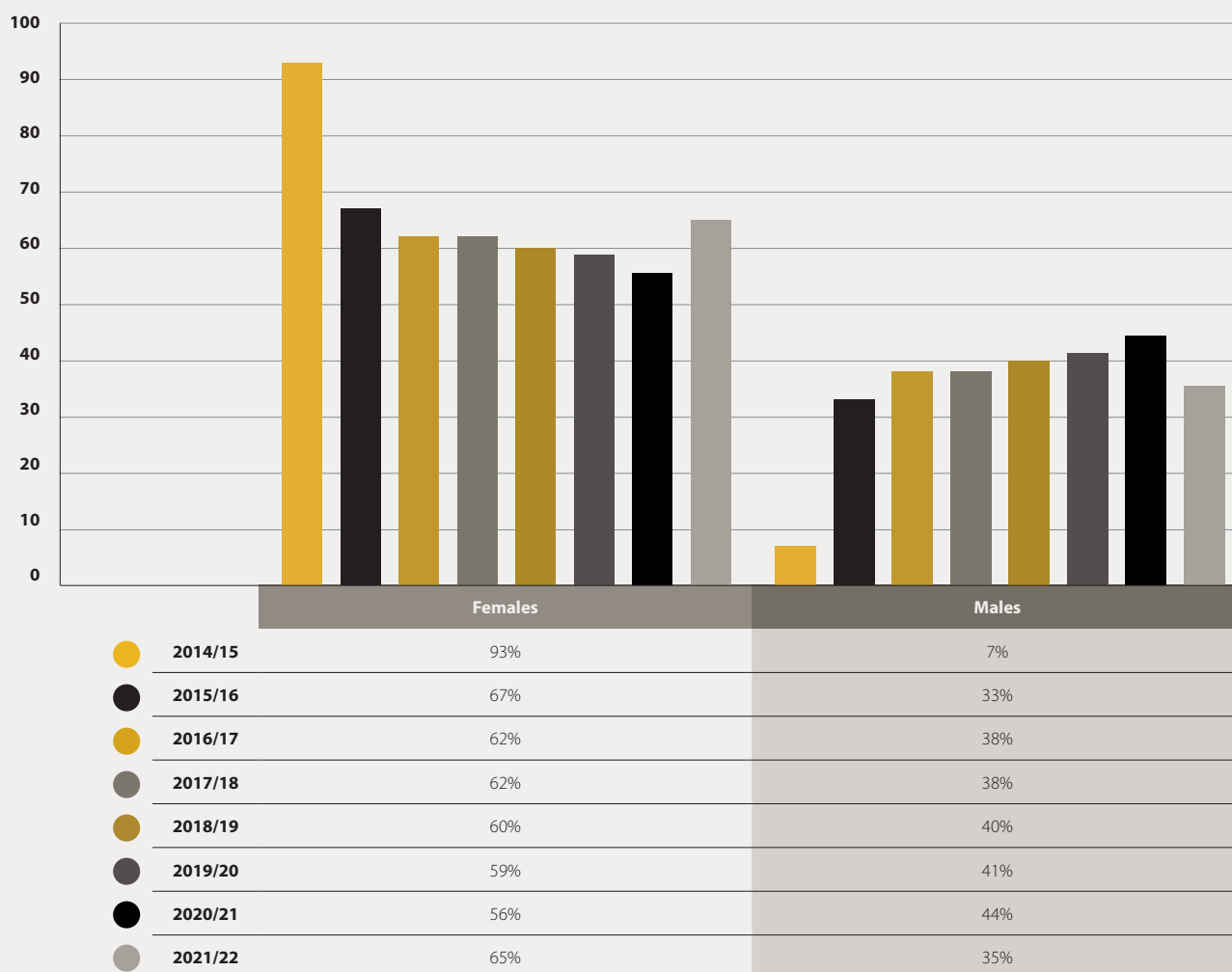
| Nature of disciplinary action | Number   |
|-------------------------------|----------|
| Verbal warning                | 0        |
| Written warning               | 0        |
| Final written warning         | 0        |
| Dismissals                    | 0        |
| <b>Total</b>                  | <b>0</b> |

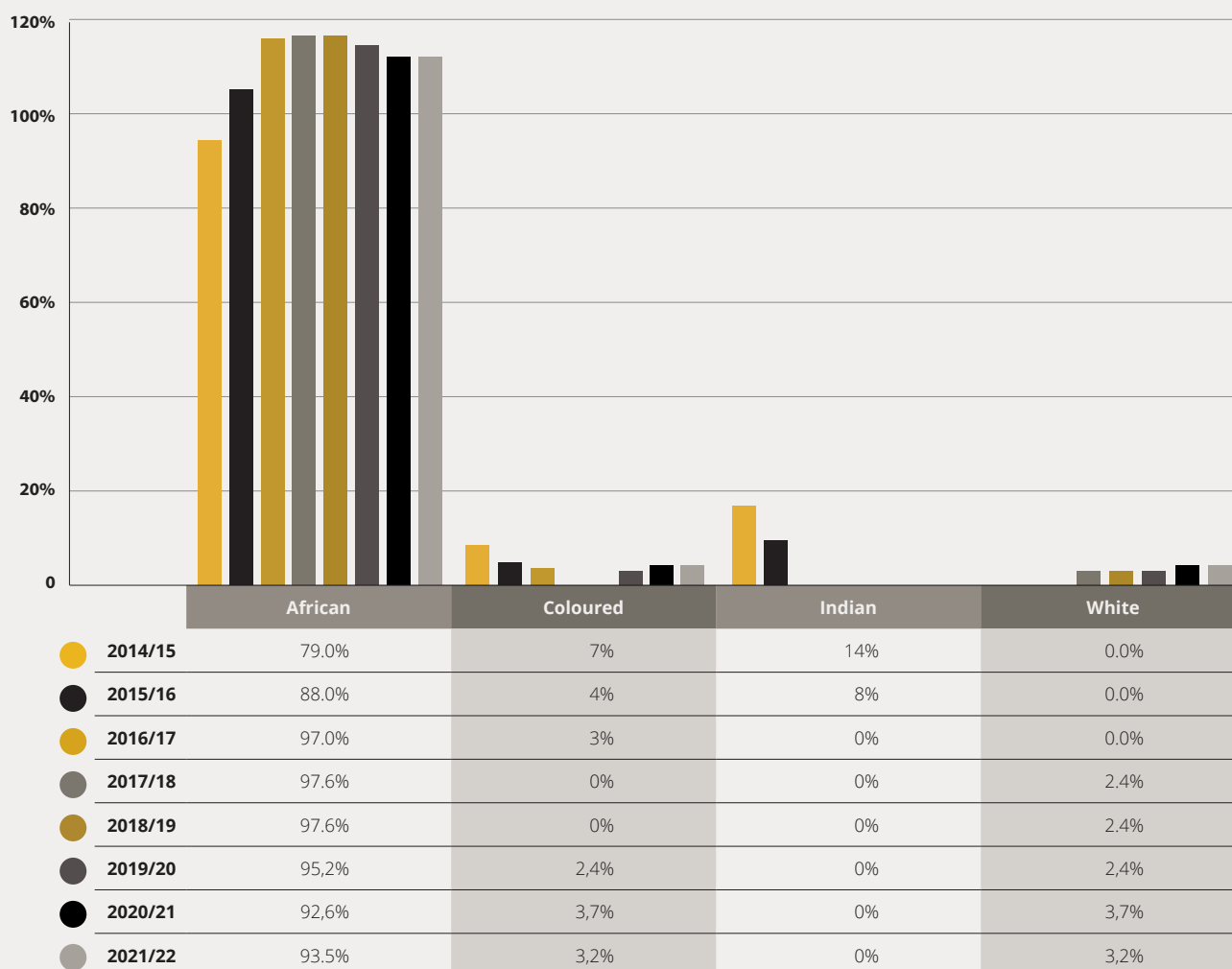
## EQUITY TARGETS AND EMPLOYMENT EQUITY STATUS

There was a slight increase in the proportion of women to men among the Institute's employees (Figure 1). Women accounted for 64% of the staff in 2021/22, compared with 56%

in 2020/21. In terms of employee race profile, 29 (93.54%) staff members were black, one (3.23%) was white and one (3.23%) coloured (Figure 2).

**Figure 1: Gender profile of NIHSS employees (2014/15-2021/22)**

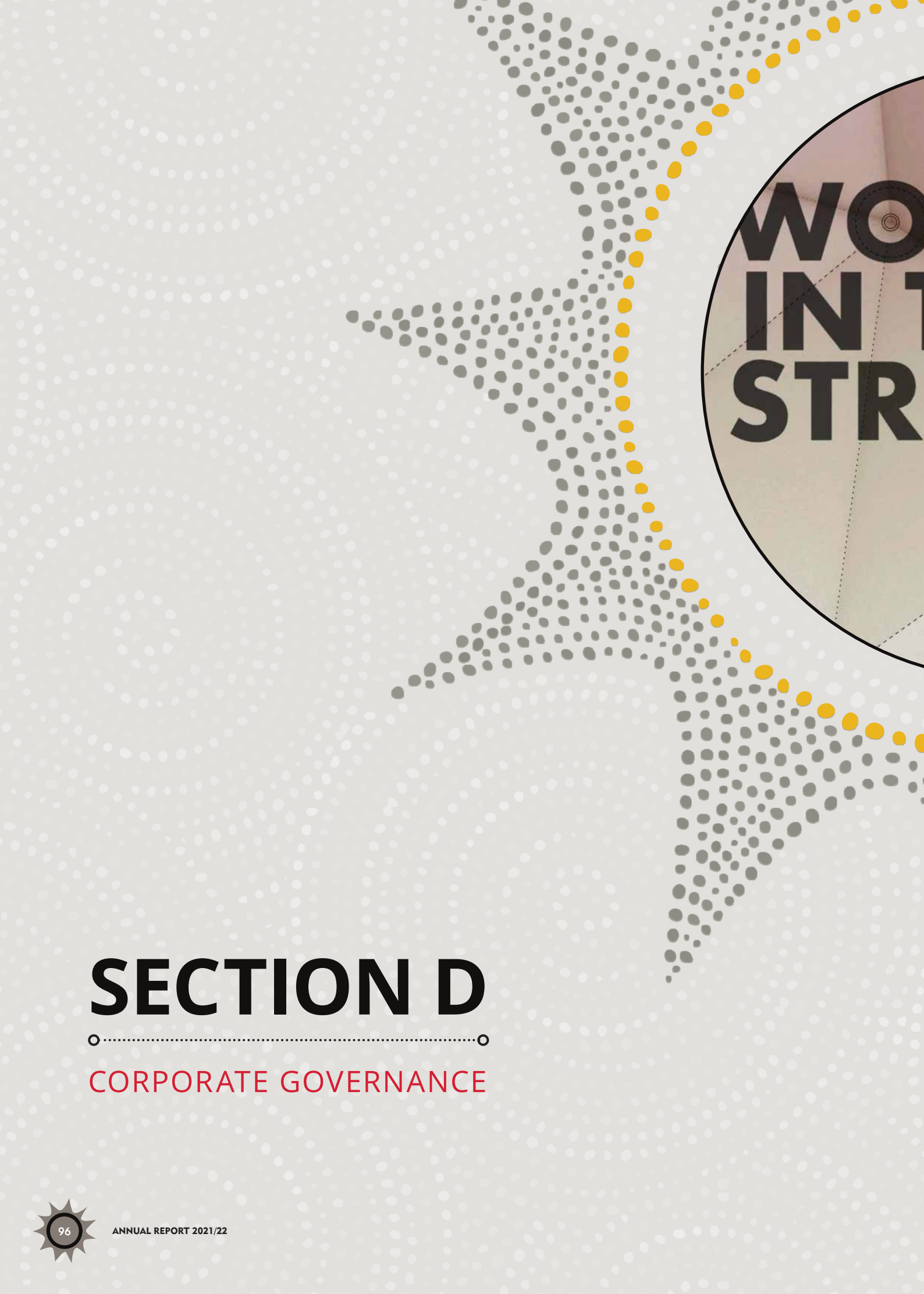


**Figure 2: Race profile of NIHSS employees (2014/15- 2021/22)**

## CONCLUSION

As an Institute that serves and pursues its mandate in collaboration with the higher education sector in South Africa and beyond, the NIHSS strives to build and maintain an organisational culture that is responsive to the needs of stakeholders, including employees, while also embodying

accountability and responsibility and an appreciation of high ethical standards. These qualities are not always easy to measure but feedback from stakeholders indicates that the Institute is for the most part succeeding in cultivating the desired organisational culture.



WO  
IN  
STR

# SECTION D



CORPORATE GOVERNANCE



Web-based exhibition by  
Liliesleaf Trust, an NIHSS  
Humanities Hub Project

O

## NIHSS GOVERNANCE

As an Institute entrusted with public funding, the NIHSS continues to be acutely attuned to the necessity of ethical leadership, efficient and effective internal controls and sound structures and policies governing the direction, decisions and actions of the organisation. At the NIHSS, governance is the responsibility of the Institute's Board, appointed by the Minister of Higher Education and Training for a four-year term of office from 28 March 2018. The term of the Board ended on 28 March 2022; however, the Minister extended it to 30 June 2022.

### NIHSS BOARD AS GOVERNING BODY

The Board's primary function is to provide governance, oversight, leadership and strategic direction in line with the mandate of the NIHSS.

The current Board consists of the Chairperson and 13 ordinary members with voting rights and diverse skills and experience, including knowledge of the academy, human resource

management, commerce, finance, ICT and law. Seven of these members are academic and management staff in the public higher education institutions, in line with the regulations governing the NIHSS. In addition, also in line with the regulations, the Board had four co-opted members during the year under review. (The names of Board members are listed in Table 18.)

## BOARD REMUNERATION

Board members are remunerated and reimbursed for expenses incurred while executing NIHSS-related activities. Board fees and expenses are disclosed in Note 18 of the Annual Financial Statements.

## MEETINGS OF THE BOARD

During the period under review, the NIHSS Board met five times to provide leadership and oversight in the governance of the Institute through:

- Reviewing the NIHSS Strategy, Annual Performance Plan and Budget for 2021/22;
- Reviewing the NIHSS Decadal Plan, Risk Assessment and Annual Performance Plan for 2022/23;
- Monitoring the implementation of the 2021/22 Annual Performance Plan by reviewing the Institute's quarterly reports;
- Reviewing policies and governance frameworks; and
- Reviewing all matters related to the ICT Governance, Human Resources, Audit and Risk, Finance and Academic and International Advisory committees.

The Board also had one workshop during the year. This was a strategic session to discuss the Decadal Plan, Risk Assessment and Annual Performance Plan for 2022/23.

**Table 18: Attendance of Board meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position              | No of meetings |          |
|--------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Prof Ari Sitas    | 5              | 5        |
| <b>Members</b>                 |                |          |
| Dr Bernard Nthambeleni         | 5              | 3        |
| Dr Rene Smith                  | 5              | 5        |
| Prof Fiona Tregenna            | 5              | 5        |
| Mr Mahlubi Mabizela            | 5              | 5        |
| Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize           | 5              | 3        |
| Prof Ahmed Bawa                | 5              | 3        |
| Prof Simphiwe Mini             | 5              | 5        |
| Ms Luli Callinicos             | 5              | 5        |
| Ms Jacomien Rousseau           | 5              | 4        |
| <b>Co-opted Board members</b>  |                |          |
| Ms Maleshini Naidoo            | 5              | 4        |
| Ms Nolwazi Mamorare            | 5              | 2        |
| Mr Thapelo Molapo              | 5              | 4        |
| Mr Ignatius Makgoka            | 5              | 5        |
| <b>Ex-officio member (CEO)</b> |                |          |
| Prof Sarah Mosoetsa            | 5              | 5        |

## BOARD COMMITTEES

For the efficient and effective discharge of its mandate, the Board has delegated some of its administrative duties to various Board subcommittees. In contrast with the Board's decision-making powers, which are strategic in nature, the subcommittees' decision making is limited to administration and support.

Five governance committees were in place throughout 2021/22 to assist the Board in carrying out its duties and to support the CEO of the NIHSS in conducting her duties. These are the Audit and Risk Committee, ICT Governance Committee, Finance Committee, Human Resource Committee and Academic and International Advisory Committee. The ICT Governance Committee was established and started operating for the first time in 2021/22.

## AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE

The Audit and Risk Committee, which is chaired by an independent member, assists the Board to fulfil its oversight role of the controls in place within the NIHSS, including proper segregation of duties, the delegation of responsibilities, safeguarding of assets, integrity of financial reporting, audit processes, the system of internal controls, the Institute's compliance with applicable legislative and governance frameworks and risk related to governance, including governance of information and technology.

Five Audit and Risk Committee meetings were held in 2021/22.

**Table 19: Attendance of Audit and Risk Committee meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position                | No of meetings |          |
|----------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                  | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Ms Maleshini Naidoo | 5              | 5        |
| <b>Members</b>                   |                |          |
| Ms Nolwazi Mamorare              | 5              | 1        |
| Ms Jacomien Rousseau             | 5              | 3        |
| Mr Mahlubi Mabizela              | 5              | 5        |
| Dr Bernard Nthambeleni           | 5              | 4        |
| Dr Rene Smith                    | 5              | 4        |
| Mr Ignatius Makgoka              | 5              | 5        |

*Note: Two of the five Audit and Risk Committee meetings that took place were held jointly with the Finance Committee*

## FINANCE COMMITTEE

The Finance Committee assists the Board in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities relating to sound financial management and supply chain management processes, including financial investments and infrastructure management (acquisition and maintenance). The committee met five times during the year.

**Table 20: Attendance of Finance Committee meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position                 | No of meetings |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                   | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Ms Jacomien Rousseau | 5              | 5        |
| <b>Members</b>                    |                |          |
| Prof Fiona Tregenna               | 5              | 5        |
| Prof Simphiwe Mini                | 5              | 4        |
| Prof Aris Sitas                   | 5              | 3        |
| Ms Nolwazi Mamorare               | 5              | 4        |

*Note: Of the five Finance Committee meetings that were held, two were held jointly with the Audit and Risk Committee*

### HUMAN RESOURCES COMMITTEE

This committee ensures that adequate human resource policies and strategies are in place and monitors the implementation of these in accordance with set criteria and measures. It met four times during 2021/22.

**Table 21: Attendance of Human Resources Committee meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position              | No of meetings |          |
|--------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Mr Thapelo Molapo | 4              | 4        |
| <b>Members</b>                 |                |          |
| Ms Luli Callinicos             | 4              | 4        |
| Mr Mahlubi Mabizela            | 4              | 4        |
| Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize           | 4              | 3        |
| Prof Ari Sitas                 | 4              | 4        |
| Prof Simphiwe Mini             | 4              | 4        |

During the year, the Human Resources Committee had two special meetings in addition to the above.

### ACADEMIC AND INTERNATIONAL ADVISORY COMMITTEE

The primary function of this committee is to advise the Board on matters related to the intellectual trajectories of the Doctoral Schools and Scholarships Programme, Catalytic Research Projects, Humanities Hubs and the African Pathways Programme. It also reviews the thematic and policy guidelines for all calls for proposals and Doctoral School applications.

Moreover, the Academic and International Advisory Committee provides oversight about all the international work of the Institute, including international collaborations and partnerships, as well as the Institute's extended mandate related to BRICS.

This committee held two meetings in 2021/22.

**Table 22: Attendance of Academic and International Advisory Committee meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position                 | No of meetings |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                   | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize | 2              | 2        |
| <b>Members</b>                    |                |          |
| Dr Bernard Nthambeleni            | 2              | 1        |
| Dr Rene Smith                     | 2              | 2        |
| Prof Fiona Tregenna               | 2              | 2        |
| Ms Luli Callinicos                | 2              | 2        |
| <b>Ex-officio Member (CEO)</b>    |                |          |
| Prof Sarah Mosoetsa               | 2              | 2        |

## ICT GOVERNANCE COMMITTEE

This committee assists the NIHSS Board to effectively discharge its responsibilities in relation to the ICT Governance Framework. It does so by addressing technology-related investments, operations and strategies of the NIHSS and their alignment with the NIHSS overall strategy and objectives. This committee was established and started operating for the first time in 2021/22.

The ICT Governance Committee held two meetings during the financial year.

**Table 23: Attendance of ICT Governance Committee meetings in 2021/22**

| Name and position                | No of meetings |          |
|----------------------------------|----------------|----------|
|                                  | Held           | Attended |
| Chairperson: Mr Ignatius Makgoka | 2              | 2        |
| <b>Members</b>                   |                |          |
| Dr Rene Smith                    | 2              | 1        |
| Mr Mahlubi Mabizela              | 2              | 2        |
| Ms Nolwazi Mamorare              | 2              | 2        |
| <b>Ex-officio Member (CFO)</b>   |                |          |
| Mr Tumelo Mokoena                | 2              | 2        |

During the year, the ICT Governance Committee had one special meeting in addition to the above.

## NIHSS SECRETARIAT

The NIHSS Secretariat ensured that all Board structures were functional and effective and that the key governance frameworks were developed or reviewed, such as the Charters/Terms of Reference and Board remuneration.

## RISK MANAGEMENT AND ASSESSMENT

The NIHSS has adopted an enterprise-wide risk management (ERM) model of risk management. Following an ERM workshop held in the first quarter of the year, the Institute updated the NIHSS Risk Register to review its risk profile. The updated Risk Register formed the basis for updating the risk-based Internal Audit Plan.

The Risk Management Framework, which was implemented in the 2020/21 financial year, together with the Risk Register, was monitored quarterly throughout the 2021/22 financial year. This included incorporating the risks identified in the previous financial year into the Register.

## INTERNAL CONTROLS

The Board approves policies that provide structure and guidelines for decision-making purposes and to ensure resources provided to the Institute are properly utilised. Policies have been approved on ICT, governance, fraud prevention, conflict of interest, finance and supply chain management, among others.

The internal auditors are responsible for assessing key controls for adequacy and effectiveness. Internal audit aids in the assessment of significant organisational risks and the review of the adequacy of internal control systems and provides the Audit and Risk Committee and the Board with assurance regarding the adequacy and effectiveness of internal financial controls and systems.

Internal audit operates in terms of a formal mandate, in full conformance with the International Professional Practices Framework for Internal Audit (Standards) and with leading risk-based and integrated methodology.

As in previous years, the internal audit function at the NIHSS was outsourced to an independent firm, Nexia SAB&T (SAB&T). SAB&T's mandate is supported by unrestricted access to the Chairperson of the Audit and Risk Committee and the Board.

The firm has the following responsibilities, among others:

- Implement the first year of the Annual Internal Audit Plan (part of the three-year Coverage Plan approved by the Audit and Risk Committee during the 2021/22 financial year). This includes any special tasks or projects, as appropriate, requested by the Audit and Risk Committee and executive management.
- Provide a professional internal audit capability with sufficient knowledge, skills and experience to meet the requirements of the NIHSS;
- Keep the Audit and Risk Committee and the Board informed of emerging trends and successful practices in internal auditing; and

- In the event of suspected significant fraudulent activities within the organisation, assist in the investigation of such activities and notify management and the Audit and Risk Committee of the findings.

During the 2021/22 financial year, internal audit activities included a financial management review of ICT vulnerability, a review of performance information and core functions, following up of external and internal audit findings and a compliance review.

The evidence obtained from the audits performed for the 2021/22 financial year indicated that the processes and related system of internal controls require improvements in the areas reviewed. These improvements are necessary to provide reasonable assurance that the NIHSS's goals and objectives in these areas will be achieved efficiently and effectively.

The results of these audit activities have been discussed with management and the Audit and Risk Committee and appropriate action plans developed to mitigate the risks.

## EXTERNAL AUDIT

The Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA) is the external auditor, responsible for independently auditing and reporting on the NIHSS's annual financial statements and performance information.

## COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS

The Board has established governance structures and frameworks to assist the Institute's compliance with legislative and regulatory requirements, as well as corporate governance best practices. To the extent possible, the NIHSS complied with applicable laws and regulatory frameworks during the period under review. Where instances of non-compliance were detected and/or observed, corrective measures were implemented.

## FRAUD AND CORRUPTION

The NIHSS is committed to ethical behaviour and to the prevention, detection and reporting of fraud in terms of a zero-tolerance approach. As such, the Institute implements the Fraud

Prevention Plan that the Board developed and approved on 30 March 2017. This plan was reviewed and a fraud and ethics hotline was implemented in the 2021/22 financial year. The plan applies to any fraud, or suspected fraud, involving Board members, employees, consultants, vendors, contractors, outside agencies and any other parties in a business relationship with the Institute.

The Fraud Prevention Plan highlights the roles and responsibilities of the Board and different categories of staff members in preventing fraud. It also provides internal mechanisms for the detection and reporting of fraudulent activities through the relevant governance structures and the regulatory bodies. Details of the reported fraud cases in the previous financial years are contained in Note 24 of the Annual Financial Statements.

## MINIMISING CONFLICT OF INTEREST

Three main processes have been implemented to reduce conflict of interest that may arise within the Supply Chain Management (SCM) portfolio. These relate to employees joining the Institute, suppliers doing business with it and staff members involved in tender or bid processes.

On joining the NIHSS, employees receive induction on the Institute's Code of Ethics and Business Conduct, as well as on its core values of ubuntu, teamwork, excellence, accountability, integrity, creativity and respect.

All suppliers conducting business with the NIHSS must sign a declaration of interest form (SBD04 form), whereby they declare any conflict of interest they might have in the procurement process concerned.

All SCM officials and staff members involved in bid specification, evaluation and adjudication are required to sign a declaration of interest form for all tenders undertaken by the Institute.

During the period under review, no instances of conflict of interest were declared. Should any cases be declared in future, the individual will not participate in the procurement process concerned.

# SECTION E

## STAKEHOLDER RELATIONS





NIHSS staff at the Annual  
National Doctoral Conference and  
Humanities and Social Sciences  
Alumni Conference 2021

Building and maintaining sound stakeholder relationships is a critical activity for the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences (NIHSS), which relies on healthy stakeholder relationships to carry out its mandate of enhancing and supporting the humanities and social sciences (HSS). It is thanks to the ongoing acceptance and cooperation of our key stakeholders that the Institute has succeeded in establishing itself as a credible, authoritative facilitator of HSS development.

The Institute does not take these relationships for granted. It strives continually to strengthen and deepen the connections with different stakeholder groups.

Through workshops, colloquiums, dialogues, conferences and other events and platforms, the Institute seeks to build value-adding, cohesive relationships with all the other key stakeholders that influence or are influenced by the NIHSS: doctoral scholars, postdoctoral fellows, mentors, public universities, professional associations, think tanks, African and international partners, and the researchers participating in or leading our Catalytic Research Projects, Humanities Hubs, Working Groups and international collaborations.

These relationships embody the elements of “social responsibility” and “community practice” that are part of the NIHSS’s vision.

Table 24: Stakeholder Relations

| Stakeholder                                                                                      | NIHSS deliverable(s)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| South African doctoral students                                                                  | Increased funding and support for HSS doctoral students                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| African Pathways Programme students                                                              | Increased number of non-South African HSS doctoral students funded by the NIHSS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Postdoctoral Research Fellowship                                                                 | Increased funding for HSS postdoctoral research fellows                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Doctoral alumni                                                                                  | A significant HSS platform to encourage alumni to share ideas and explore future collaborations, and support their transition to the next phases in their careers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Department of Higher Education and Training                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comprehensive reporting at agreed levels</li> <li>• Performance monitoring in terms of the NIHSS mandate</li> <li>• Policy advice on matters related to the HSS</li> <li>• Advice to the Minister of Higher Education and Training and government on HSS-related matters</li> <li>• Increased and guided academic discourse about the crucial social issues that face South African citizens (thus helping to influence the character of the South African community and contributing to the creation of a more humane, responsible and just society)</li> </ul> |
| Doctoral Schools                                                                                 | Increased number of Doctoral Schools established and operational, providing a platform for academic support to NIHSS-funded doctoral students                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| NIHSS employees                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Favourable working conditions</li> <li>• Support for students enrolled for studies</li> <li>• Support for research project leaders participating in various NIHSS programmes</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Funders                                                                                          | Potential partnerships for ad hoc projects in line with agreed upon service levels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Higher education institutions (HEIs)                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Funding of research through Catalytic Research Projects</li> <li>• Administration of NIHSS scholarships and research funding through HEIs' internal financial processes</li> <li>• Resources to provide better support for postgraduate students</li> <li>• Increased funding for PhD and master's students</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| National Skills Fund (NSF)                                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Funding of HSS PhD students</li> <li>• Funding of NIHSS research</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| South African Humanities Deans' Association (SAHUDA)                                             | Collaboration in the screening of applications for Doctoral Schools and Scholarships Programme through panel review                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Non-governmental organisations (NGOs)                                                            | Potential partnerships for ad hoc projects in line with agreed upon service levels                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| South African citizens                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Demonstrated social responsibility and societal responsiveness</li> <li>• Informed perspectives to help address the socio-economic challenges facing South Africa and her citizens</li> <li>• Advice to civil society bodies on HSS-related matters; and increased and guided public discourse about the crucial social issues facing citizens, to help build a better South Africa for all</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                           |
| BRICS partner countries                                                                          | Engagement through the SABTT with other official think tanks from the BRICS countries                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Department of International Relations and Cooperation                                            | A close working relationship between the SATBB and government to align the SABTT with government policy                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| BRICS Think Tank Council (BTTC), a network of five official think tanks from the BRICS countries | Coordination and management by the SABTT of all BTTC-related activities                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| SA Parliament                                                                                    | Sound and independent policy advice on HSS matters                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



# KEY PARTNERSHIPS



# SECTION F



## ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS



## REPORT BY THE AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE

For the financial year ended 31 March 2022, the Audit and Risk Committee complied with its responsibilities, as contained in the charter that regulates the committee's mandate.

### Audit and Risk Committee establishment

The Audit and Risk Committee was formally established on 1 November 2018. The 2021/22 financial year was its third fully functioning year.

The composition of the committee and the attendance of meetings during the period under review are recorded under the governance section on page 98.

### Audit and Risk Committee's responsibilities

The main responsibilities of the committee, as outlined in its charter, include the following, among others:

- Reviewing the appropriateness of accounting policies and compliance with these;
- Through the internal auditors, reviewing the adequacy and the effectiveness of policies and procedures applicable to the NIHSS and whether they are complied with;
- Reviewing the financial management processes and the adequacy of internal controls;
- Reviewing the annual financial statements, the annual report and related regulatory filings before these are released, in order to consider the accuracy and completeness of the information;
- The governance of information and communication technology (ICT);
- Overseeing the internal and external audit functions and related audit processes;
- Reviewing the Institute's compliance with applicable legislative requirements and governance frameworks; and
- Ensuring adherence to all the disclosures and/or reporting requirements to the Board, the Executive Authority, the National Treasury and the Auditor-General.

### Effectiveness of internal controls

The Institute has approved policies and frameworks to guide, on an ongoing basis, the implementation of effective and efficient internal controls and procedures.

The internal audit function at the Institute is managed by Nexia SAB&T. The three-year, risk based rolling internal audit plan was reviewed and approved.

For the 2021/22 financial year, the committee reviewed the reports from both the internal and external auditors for the period under review and controls were effective.

### Review and monitoring of performance information

The committee reviewed the actual performance of the NIHSS against the strategic objectives and targets set in the Annual Performance Plan for 2021/22 and was satisfied with the content and quality of the quarterly performance reports prepared and issued by the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer (CFO) during the year under review. Where required, the committee made recommendations for enhancements to the reports.

### Evaluation of the annual financial statements

The Audit and Risk Committee reviewed the audited annual financial statements on 23 June 2022, in consultation with management and the internal and external auditors and recommended the financial statements for Board approval.

The committee is satisfied that the audited financial statements have been submitted to the Minister by the legislated date of 30 June 2022.

### Summary of the committee's main activities during 2021/22

The Audit and Risk Committee attended to the following matters during the year under review:

- The review of the committee's charter, subsequently approved by the Board;
- The review of the external audit strategy and fees, subsequently approved by the Board;
- The approval of the three-year rolling internal audit plan and associated audit fees;
- The review of the Institute's risk profile, resulting in the updating of the Strategic and Operational Risk Register, the implementation of which will be continually monitored onto the 2022/23 financial year
- A review on 23 June 2022 of the audited annual financial statements for the year ended 31 March 2022;
- Review of the ICT Steering Committee reports on implementation of the ICT Governance Framework;
- Review of the internal and external audit reports;
- Monitoring of actual or suspected fraudulent activities within the organisation;
- Keeping the Board informed of key issues within the committee's scope; with committee reports submitted and presented at all Board meetings.

### Internal audit

The outsourced internal auditors, Nexia SAB&T, reported that they had executed all the activities expected of them in terms of the internal audit plan reporting period. Nexia SAB&T concluded that the evidence obtained indicated that the processes and related systems of internal controls, in the areas reviewed, will be achieved efficiently and effectively. The results of the audits have been discussed with management and appropriate plans developed to mitigate the risks.

### External audit

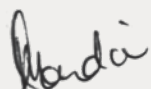
The external audit was overseen by the Auditor-General of South Africa. The Auditor-General has issued an unqualified audit opinion for the 2021/22 financial year.

### Conclusion

Subsequent to the audit of the financial statements, performance information and compliance legislation, we can report that the systems of internal control for the 2021/22 financial year were effective and efficient and no significant deficiencies in internal controls were identified.

### Date on which the Audit and Risk Committee recommended the AFS be approved

The committee recommended the approval of the audited annual financial statements at the Board meeting held on 24 June 2022 for submission to the Department of Higher Education and Training, the Accountant-General (National Treasury) and the Auditor-General.



**Ms Maleshini Naidoo**

**Chairperson of the Audit and Risk Committee**

**Date: 24 June 2022**



### CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER'S REPORT

The five-year mandate of the NIHSS as per the five-year Strategic Plan ended on 31 March 2020, with the Department of Higher and Education extending it by a further three years in the short term. As such, the 2021/22 financial was a special year which marked the 8<sup>th</sup> year anniversary of the NIHSS on 5 December 2021.

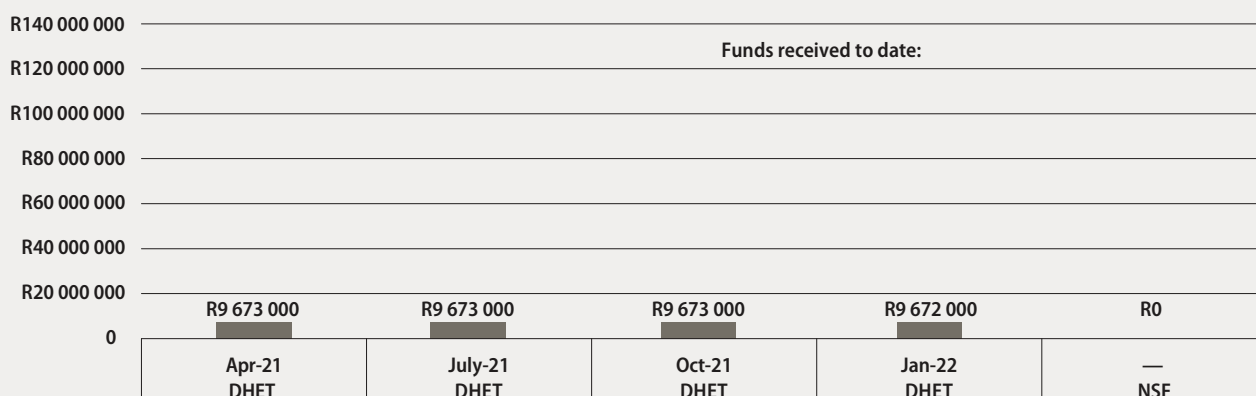
I am extremely proud and honoured to present the financial report of the NIHSS for the 2021/22 financial year. Each year brings with it remarkable milestones worthy of celebrating. It has been an absolute pleasure to be part of this amazing journey. The journey has gone a long way in changing the lives of ordinary South Africans and those on the wider African continent, within the humanities and social sciences sphere. As we look forward to another five years, we remain eager and optimistic on the journey ahead.

Great strides continue to be made through the NIHSS (SAHUDA collaboration) scholarships to grow the HSS within the South African borders, while our CODESRIA partnership supports the scholarships within the African continent, through the African Pathways Programme. From inception to date, the NIHSS has reported a total of 418 PhD graduations cumulatively, inclusive of South African and non-South African students. This is evidence yet again that the HSS, through the NIHSS, is slowly and gradually being transformed. This is a definite positive impact on the state of academia within the HSS.

Funding for the 2021/22 financial year was received as follows:

- A total of **R38 690 000** was received from the DHET to fund our operational requirements as the NIHSS. Included in this amount was **R8 586 000** for the BRICS programme, which is project expenditure. This amount was received quarterly in four tranches and was recognised as revenue in full. For the current year, no amount was received from the NSF to fund administration costs of projects.
- A total of **R109 435 708** was expected from the NSF to fund projects and programmes. None of this amount was received from the NSF.
- Interest income of **R3 972 803** was received from investments and bank accounts.
- A net surplus of **R7 828** was realised, on the disposal of assets.

The total revenue recognised for the 2021/22 financial year was therefore **R97 920 012** which represents a decrease of **59%** from the previous year. This decrease was as a result of the non-receipt of project funds from NSF, for the 2021/22 financial year.



The expenditure on projects was as follows:

### NIHSS SCHOLARSHIP PROGRAMME

A total of **R24 131 000** was disbursed to NIHSS-funded PhD fellows within the South African public universities. This represents an increase in disbursement of 81% from the previous financial year. This was for returning (renewed) as well as new intakes of students.

A total of **R1 056 000** was disbursed to non-South African doctoral students funded through CODESRIA. This represents an increase in disbursement of 60% from the previous financial year. This was also for returning (renewed) as well as new intakes of students.

The funding for 2021/22 from NSF was not received by 31 March 2022. As such the above and below were funded from NIHSS reserves.

Other significant projects supported during the period under review are:

- Catalytic Research Projects – a total of **R2 255 669** was funded, resulting in a decrease of 61% from the previous year. This is largely due to non-receipt of funds for projects.
- Humanities Hubs – a total of **R4 713 210** was committed for support, totalling an increase of 4% from the previous year.
- BRICS Think Tank – a total of **R9 322 414** was funded, reflecting an increase of 73% from the previous year.
- Working Groups – a total of **R19 500 339** was funded, reflecting a decrease of 31% from the previous year.
- National Mentorship Programme – a total of **R4 300 000** was spent, meaning an increase of 11%.
- Annual National Doctoral Conference – a total of **R9 244 980** was committed for this initiative, with its aim being to create and foster student-centred approaches to doctoral research development, while also providing students with a platform and opportunity to present and showcase their research with fellow doctoral candidates.

Overall, total project expenditure increased by 13%. This is mainly due to an increase in strategic objectives as recorded in the APP.

### AUDIT OUTCOMES

Given that the Institute is in its eighth year of existence, outstanding results have been achieved in terms of audit outcomes. The NIHSS obtained a clean audit outcome from the Auditor-General of South Africa consecutively for the five-year from 2016/17 until 2020/21. An unqualified audit opinion

was expressed for the 2021/22 financial year. This highlights the effectiveness of all endeavours and commitments towards effective financial management and administration.

### OPERATIONAL CHALLENGES EXPERIENCED

- Late disbursement of funding for projects continued to be a challenge in the 2021/22 financial year, which worsened as the funds for 2021/22 were not received by 31 March 2022. This created challenges in terms of disbursement to the beneficiaries. However, funds were committed accordingly by the end of the financial year.
- On 27 March 2020, the country was placed under lockdown due to the Covid-19 outbreak. All NIHSS staff members were required to work from home throughout the lockdown period. Staff members were equipped with the necessary resources to enable them to work from home, therefore there was no major impact on business continuity during that period. Staff returned to the office in the 2020/21 financial year and operations stabilised in the 2021/22 financial year.

Looking forward, we are optimistic regarding the next five years of the NIHSS and eagerly await the review process outcomes.

I would like to thank the DHET and the NSF for their continued support during the financial year.

A special thank you is due to the NIHSS Board, for their continued leadership and guidance and holding us accountable in all that we do.

I would like to thank our CEO, Prof Sarah Mosoetsa, for her visionary leadership yet again; each year comes with challenges, however excellence always prevails.

Last but certainly not least, gratitude goes to the NIHSS staff, our students, project leaders, mentors and various other stakeholders, without whom we would not exist. We continue to pride ourselves in serving them.



**Tumelo Mokoena CA (SA)**  
**Chief Financial Officer**

# REPORT OF THE AUDITOR-GENERAL TO THE MINISTER OF HIGHER EDUCATION, SCIENCE AND INNOVATION ON THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR THE HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

## REPORT ON THE AUDIT OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### Opinion

1. I have audited the financial statements of the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences set out on pages 115 to 153, which comprise the statement of financial position as at 31 March 2022, the statement of financial performance, statement of changes in net assets, and cash flow statement and statement of comparison of budget and actual amount for the year then ended, as well as notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.
2. In my opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences as at 31 March 2022, and its financial performance and cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with the Standards of Generally Recognised Accounting Practice (GRAP) and the requirements of the Higher Education Act 101 of 1997.

### Basis for opinion

3. I conducted my audit in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). My responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor-General's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements section of my report.
4. I am independent of the institute in accordance with the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *International code of ethics for professional accountants (including International Independence Standards)* (IESBA code) as well as other ethical requirements that are relevant to my audit in South Africa. I have fulfilled my other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the IESBA code.
5. I believe that the audit evidence I have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for my opinion.

### Responsibilities of the accounting authority for the financial statements

6. The accounting authority is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with GRAP and the requirements of the Higher Education Act, and for

such internal control as the accounting authority determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

7. In preparing the financial statements, the accounting authority is responsible for assessing the institute's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters relating to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless the appropriate governance structure either intends to liquidate the institute or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

### Auditor-General's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements

8. My objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes my opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with the ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.
9. A further description of my responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is included in the annexure to this auditor's report.

## REPORT OF THE AUDIT OF THE ANNUAL PERFORMANCE REPORT

### Introduction and scope

10. In accordance with the Public Audit Act 25 of 2004 (PAA) and the general notice issued in terms thereof, I have a responsibility to report on the reliability of the reported performance information against predetermined objectives for selected objectives presented in the annual performance report. I performed procedures to identify material findings but not to gather evidence to express assurance.

11. My procedures address the reliability of the reported performance information, which must be based on the institute's approved performance planning documents. I have not evaluated the completeness and appropriateness of the performance indicators included in the planning documents. My procedures do not examine whether the actions taken by the institute enabled service delivery. My procedures do not extend to any disclosures or assertions relating to the extent of achievements in the current year or planned performance strategies and information in respect of future periods that may be included as part of the reported performance information. Accordingly, my findings do not extend to these matters.

12. I evaluated the reliability of the reported performance information in accordance with the criteria developed from the performance management and reporting framework, as defined in the general notice, for the following selected objective presented in the institute's annual performance report for the year ended 31 March 2022:

| Objectives                                                                             | Pages in the annual performance report |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Strategic objective 2: Advance postgraduate scholarship through a range of innovations | 30-45                                  |

13. I performed procedures to assess the reliability of the reported performance information to determine whether it was valid, accurate and complete.

14. I did not identify any material findings on the reliability of the reported performance information for:

- Strategic objective 2 – advance postgraduate scholarship through a range of innovations.

#### Other matter

15. I draw attention to the matter below.

#### Adjustment of material misstatements

16. I identified material misstatements in the annual performance report submitted for auditing. These material misstatements were on the reported performance information of strategic objective 2 – advance postgraduate scholarship through a range of innovations. As management subsequently corrected the misstatements, I did not raise any material findings on the reliability of the reported performance information.

### REPORT ON THE AUDIT OF COMPLIANCE WITH LEGISLATION

#### Introduction and scope

17. In accordance with the PAA and the general notice issued in terms thereof, I have a responsibility to report material findings on the

institute's compliance with specific matters in key legislation. I performed procedures to identify findings but not to gather evidence to express assurance.

18. I did not identify any material findings on compliance with the specific matters in key legislation set out in the general notice issued in terms of the PAA.

### OTHER INFORMATION

19. The accounting authority is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the information included in the annual report. The other information does not include the financial statements, the auditor's report and those selected objectives presented in the annual performance report that have been specifically reported in this auditor's report.

20. My opinion on the financial statements and findings on the reported performance information and compliance with legislation does not cover the other information, and I do not express an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion on it.

21. In connection with my audit, my responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements and the selected objective presented in the annual performance report or my knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

22. I did not receive the other information prior to the date of this auditor's report. When I do receive and read this information, if I conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, I am required to communicate the matter to those charged with governance and request that the other information be corrected. If the other information is not corrected, I may have to retract this auditor's report and re-issue an amended report as appropriate. However, if it is corrected, this will not be necessary.

### INTERNAL CONTROL DEFICIENCIES

23. I considered internal control relevant to my audit of the financial statements, reported performance information and compliance with applicable legislation; however, my objective was not to express any form of assurance on it. The matters reported below are limited to the significant internal

control deficiencies that resulted in the significant findings identified during the audit.

24. Management did not ensure that financial statements and performance reports were accurate, complete and supported by reliable evidence. This resulted in misstatements in the annual financial statements and the annual performance report, which were not prevented.
25. Management did not ensure that the following financial statements line items were presented and free from material misstatement in line with the requirements of the GRAP in the financial statements. These misstatements related to the following areas:
  - Receivables from exchange transactions
  - Related Parties disclosure note
  - Cash flow Statements
  - Risk management disclosure note
  - Performance information

*Auditor-General*  
Pretoria

5 July 2022



## ANNEXURE – AUDITOR-GENERAL'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE AUDIT

1. As part of an audit in accordance with the ISAs, I exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout my audit of the financial statements and the procedures performed on reported performance information for selected objectives and on the institute's compliance with respect to the selected subject matters.

### Financial statements

2. In addition to my responsibility for the audit of the financial statements as described in this auditor's report, I also:
  - Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error; design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks; and

obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for my opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations or the override of internal control

- obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the institute's internal control
- evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by the board of directors, which constitutes the accounting authority
- conclude on the appropriateness of the use of the going concern basis of accounting by the accounting authority in the preparation of the financial statements. I also conclude, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the ability of the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences to continue as a going concern. If I conclude that a material uncertainty exists, I am required to draw attention in my auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements about the material uncertainty or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify my opinion on the financial statements. My conclusions are based on the information available to me at the date of this auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause an institute to cease operating as a going concern
- evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and determine whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

### Communication with those charged with governance

3. I communicate with the accounting authority regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that I identify during my audit.
4. I also provide the accounting authority with a statement that I have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence and communicate all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on my independence and, where applicable, actions taken to eliminate threats or safeguards applied.

# INDEX

THE REPORTS AND STATEMENTS SET OUT BELOW COMPRISE THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS:

|                                                                                               |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Statement of Financial Position as at 31 March 2022</b>                                    | <b>115</b> |
| <b>Statement of Financial Performance for the year ending 31 March 2022</b>                   | <b>116</b> |
| <b>Cash Flow Statement for the year ending 31 March 2022</b>                                  | <b>117</b> |
| <b>Statement of Changes in Net Assets as at 31 March 2022</b>                                 | <b>118</b> |
| <b>Statement of Comparison of Budget and Actual Amounts for the year ending 31 March 2022</b> | <b>119</b> |
| <b>Accounting Policies</b>                                                                    | <b>120</b> |
| <b>Notes to the Financial Statements</b>                                                      | <b>126</b> |

The financial statements set out on pages 115 to 153, which have been prepared on the going concern basis, were approved by the CEO and the Board on 24 June 2022 and were signed on its behalf by:



**Prof Sarah Mosoetsa**  
Chief Executive Officer (CEO)



**Prof Aristides Sitas**  
Board - Chairperson

## STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 31 MARCH 2022

| Figures in Rands                                        | Notes | 2022               | 2021               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Assets</b>                                           |       |                    |                    |
| <b>Non-current assets</b>                               |       |                    |                    |
| Property, plant and equipment                           | 4     | 3 642 847          | 2 972 816          |
| Intangible assets                                       | 5     | 1 643 863          | 1 157 875          |
|                                                         |       | <b>5 286 710</b>   | <b>4 130 691</b>   |
| <b>Current assets</b>                                   |       |                    |                    |
| Inventories                                             |       | 309 992            | 26 488             |
| Prepayments                                             | 6     | 329 426            | 528 154            |
| Receivables from exchange transactions                  | 7     | 1 637 575          | 744 118            |
| Receivables from non-exchange transactions              | 7     | -                  | 135 106 206        |
| Cash and cash equivalents                               | 8     | 127 634 683        | 78 814 972         |
|                                                         |       | <b>129 911 676</b> | <b>215 219 938</b> |
| <b>Total assets</b>                                     |       | <b>135 198 386</b> | <b>219 350 629</b> |
| <b>Liabilities</b>                                      |       |                    |                    |
| <b>Non-current liabilities</b>                          |       |                    |                    |
| Finance lease liability                                 | 10    | 118 569            | -                  |
| <b>Current liabilities</b>                              |       |                    |                    |
| Trade and other payables from exchange transactions     | 9     | 4 894 352          | 4 661 752          |
| Trade and other payables from non-exchange transactions | 9     | 34 773 384         | 85 107 776         |
| Provisions                                              | 9.1   | 1 788 316          | 1 071 856          |
| Operating lease liability                               |       | 825 359            | 535 695            |
| Short-term portion of finance lease liability           | 10    | 109 753            | -                  |
| Cash and cash equivalents                               | 8.1   | 58 912             | 6 252              |
| <b>Total liabilities</b>                                |       | <b>42 568 645</b>  | <b>91 383 331</b>  |
| <b>Net assets</b>                                       |       | <b>92 629 741</b>  | <b>127 967 298</b> |
| Reserves                                                |       | 92 629 741         | 127 967 298        |
| <b>Net assets</b>                                       |       | <b>92 629 741</b>  | <b>127 967 298</b> |

## STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE FOR YEAR ENDING 31 MARCH 2022

| Figures in Rands                                    | Notes | 2022                | 2021               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Revenue</b>                                      |       |                     |                    |
| <b>Revenue from exchange transactions</b>           |       |                     |                    |
| Investment revenue                                  | 15    | 3 972 803           | 755 085            |
| Other income                                        |       | 917 545             | 29 619             |
| <b>Total revenue from exchange transactions</b>     |       | <b>4 890 348</b>    | <b>784 704</b>     |
| <b>Revenue from non-exchange transactions</b>       |       |                     |                    |
| <b>Transfer revenue</b>                             |       |                     |                    |
| Government funding                                  |       | 93 029 664          | 239 610 093        |
| <b>Total revenue from non-exchange transactions</b> |       | <b>93 029 664</b>   | <b>239 610 093</b> |
| <b>Total revenue</b>                                | 11    | <b>97 920 012</b>   | <b>240 394 797</b> |
| <b>Expenditure</b>                                  |       |                     |                    |
| Employee related costs                              | 12    | 23 508 606          | 22 633 226         |
| Depreciation and amortisation                       | 4,5   | 1 356 369           | 1 274 037          |
| Rent and utilities (lease rental)                   |       | 3 414 540           | 3 473 929          |
| Project expenses                                    | 13    | 88 469 555          | 78 202 887         |
| General expenses                                    | 14.1  | 13 143 432          | 12 071 001         |
| Project administration fee                          | 14.2  | 3 372 895           | 2 060 105          |
| <b>Total expenditure</b>                            |       | <b>133 265 397</b>  | <b>119 715 185</b> |
| Gain (loss) on disposal of assets and liabilities   |       | 7 828               | 15 900             |
| <b>(Deficit) / surplus for the year</b>             |       | <b>(35 337 557)</b> | <b>120 695 512</b> |

## CASH FLOW STATEMENT FOR YEAR ENDING 31 MARCH 2022

| Figures in Rands                                        | Notes | 2022               | 2021                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>             |       |                    |                     |
| <b>Receipts</b>                                         |       |                    |                     |
| Government funding                                      |       | 174 380 280        | 40 158 013          |
| Interest income                                         | 15    | 3 972 803          | 755 085             |
| Other Income                                            |       | 114 088            |                     |
|                                                         |       | <b>178 467 171</b> | <b>40 913 098</b>   |
| <b>Payments</b>                                         |       |                    |                     |
| Project expenses                                        |       | (87 483 567)       | (80 262 992)        |
| Compensation of employees and Board members             |       | (23 339 798)       | (23 003 686)        |
| Payments to suppliers                                   |       | (16 495 801)       | (15 253 491)        |
|                                                         |       | (127 319 166)      | (118 520 169)       |
| <b>Net cash flows from operating activities</b>         | 16    | <b>51 148 005</b>  | <b>(77 607 071)</b> |
| <b>Cash flows from investing activities</b>             |       |                    |                     |
| Purchase of property, plant and equipment               | 4     | (1 360 041)        | (182 413)           |
| Proceeds from sale of property, plant and equipment     | 4     | 29 860             | 15 900              |
| Purchase of other intangible assets                     | 5     | (927 169)          | (361 925)           |
| <b>Net cash flows from investing activities</b>         |       | <b>(2 257 350)</b> | <b>(528 438)</b>    |
| <b>Cash flows from financing activities</b>             |       |                    |                     |
| Proceeds from finance lease                             | 10    | (123 604)          | -                   |
| <b>Net cash flows from financing activities</b>         |       | <b>(123 604)</b>   | <b>-</b>            |
| <b>Net increase in cash and cash equivalents</b>        |       | <b>48 767 051</b>  | <b>(78 135 509)</b> |
| Cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of the year  |       | 78 808 720         | 156 944 229         |
| <b>Cash and cash equivalents at the end of the year</b> | 8     | <b>127 575 771</b> | <b>78 808 720</b>   |

## STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN NET ASSETS AS AT 31 MARCH 2022

| Figures in Rands                              | Note | Reserves           |
|-----------------------------------------------|------|--------------------|
| <b>Balance at 1 April 2020</b>                |      | 7 271 786          |
| Net profit for the year ended 31 March 2021   |      | 120 695 512        |
| Adjustment to retained earnings 31 March 2021 |      | -                  |
| <b>Balance at 31 March 2021</b>               |      | <b>127 967 298</b> |
| <b>Balance at 1 April 2021</b>                |      | 127 967 298        |
| Net deficit for the year ended 31 March 2022  |      | (35 337 557)       |
| Adjustment to retained earnings 31 March 2022 | 29   | -                  |
| <b>Balance at 31 March 2022</b>               |      | <b>92 629 741</b>  |

## STATEMENT OF COMPARISON OF BUDGET AND ACTUAL AMOUNTS FOR THE YEAR ENDING 31 MARCH 2022

| Figures in Rands                                    | Approved budget    | Actual              | Variance            | Note |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------|
| <b>Statement of financial performance</b>           |                    |                     |                     |      |
| <b>Revenue</b>                                      |                    |                     |                     |      |
| <b>Revenue from exchange transactions</b>           |                    |                     |                     |      |
| Investment revenue                                  | -                  | 3 972 803           | 3 972 803           | 21   |
| Other income                                        | -                  | 917 545             | 917 545             |      |
| <b>Total revenue from exchange transactions</b>     | <b>-</b>           | <b>4 890 348</b>    | <b>4 890 348</b>    |      |
| <b>Revenue from non-exchange transactions</b>       |                    |                     |                     |      |
| <b>Transfer revenue</b>                             |                    |                     |                     |      |
| Government funding - operations                     | 31 255 278         | 30 104 000          | (1 151 278)         | 21   |
| Government funding - projects                       | 118 021 708        | 62 925 664          | (55 096 044)        | 21   |
| <b>Total revenue from non-exchange transactions</b> | <b>149 276 986</b> | <b>93 029 664</b>   | <b>(56 247 322)</b> |      |
| <b>Total revenue</b>                                | <b>149 276 986</b> | <b>97 920 012</b>   | <b>(51 356 974)</b> |      |
| <b>Expenditure</b>                                  |                    |                     |                     |      |
| Operating Expenditure                               | 31 255 278         | 44 788 014          | (13 532 736)        | 21   |
| Scholarships and Programmes                         | 118 021 708        | 88 469 555          | 29 552 153          | 21   |
| <b>Total expenditure</b>                            | <b>149 276 986</b> | <b>133 257 569</b>  | <b>16 019 417</b>   |      |
| <b>Deficit for the year</b>                         | <b>-</b>           | <b>(35 337 557)</b> | <b>(35 337 557)</b> |      |

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### 1. Presentation of financial statements

These financial statements have been prepared in accordance with, and comply with, effective Standards of Generally Recognised Accounting Practice (GRAP) including any interpretations, guidelines and directives issued by the Accounting Standards Board. The implementation of new GRAP standards has not resulted in any change in accounting policy.

These financial statements have been prepared on an accrual basis of accounting and are in accordance with historical cost convention as the basis of measurement, unless specified otherwise.

A summary of the significant accounting policies, which have been consistently applied in the preparation of these financial statements, are disclosed below.

#### 1.1 Presentation currency

These financial statements are presented in South African Rand, which is the functional currency of the NIHSS.

#### 1.2 Going concern assumption

These financial statements have been prepared based on the expectation that the NIHSS will continue to operate as a going concern for at least the next 12 months. Management's assessment revealed that the NIHSS's ability to continue as a going concern was not significantly affected by COVID-19. Furthermore, a review process was conducted by a review panel as appointed by the Minister and assessed the mandate of the NIHSS with a recommendation send through to the Department in terms of its extention. During the review of the mandate, a budget was allocated and approved for prior year as well as current year ended 31 March 2022. The Annual Performance Plan for the financial year ended 31 March 2023 has been submitted to the DHET. Furthermore, a budget vote has been approved for the NIHSS for the next 3 financial years in terms of the Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

#### 1.3 Property, plant and equipment

Property, plant and equipment are initially measured at cost. Cost includes expenditure that is directly attributable to the acquisition of the asset. Purchased software that is integral to the functionality of the related equipment is capitalised as part of that equipment.

Property, plant and equipment are subsequently measured at cost less accumulated depreciation and any impairment losses.

Property, plant and equipment are depreciated on the straight line basis over their expected useful lives to their estimated residual value. This has been disclosed under Note 4 of the Annual Financial Statements.

The useful lives of items of property, plant and equipment have been assessed as follows:

| Item                          | Average useful life           | Depreciation rates |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Office furniture and fittings | 9 - 11 years                  | 9% - 11%           |
| Office equipment              | 4 - 6 years                   | 16% - 25%          |
| Computer equipment            | 2 - 4 years                   | 25% - 50%          |
| Leasehold improvements        | over the lease term (3 years) | 33%                |

An assessment is done at each reporting period of whether there is any indication that the entity's expectation about the residual values and the useful lives of assets have changed since the preceding reporting period. If any such indication exists, the expected useful lives and/or residual values are revised accordingly.

NIHSS derecognises its item of property, plant equipment and/or significant part of an asset upon disposal or when no future economic benefits or service potential can be derived from the asset.

The gain or loss arising from the derecognition of an item of property, plant and equipment is included in surplus or deficit when the item is derecognised. The gain or loss arising from the derecognition of an item of property, plant and equipment is determined as the difference between the net disposal proceeds, if any, and the carrying amount of the item.

Where the carrying amount of an item of property, plant and equipment is greater than its estimated recoverable service amount, it is written down immediately to its recoverable amount (i.e. impairment losses are recognised).

Expenditure incurred on assets to repair and maintain them are disclosed separately in the Notes to the Financial Statements.

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### Impairment of assets

Assets are annually assessed, by considering internal and external factors where there is an indication of impairment.

If any such indication exists, the recoverable amount of the asset is estimated at the higher of fair value less cost to sell and its value in use.

For the current financial year, indicators considered were assets which had a zero net book value. No external factors existed that indicated impairment of assets.

### 1.4 Intangible assets

An intangible asset is initially measured at cost.

Intangible assets are subsequently measured at cost less any accumulated amortisation and any impairment losses.

The useful lives of intangible assets have been assessed as follows:

| Item              | Useful life | Depreciation rate |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| Computer software | 2-4 years   | 50% - 100%        |

An assessment is done at each reporting period of whether there is any indication that the entity's expectation about the residual values and the useful lives of intangible assets have changed since the preceding reporting period. If any such indication exists, the expected useful lives and/or residual values are revised accordingly.

The gain or loss is the difference between the net disposal proceeds, if any, and the carrying amount. It is recognised in surplus or deficit when the asset is derecognised.

Where the carrying amount of an intangible asset is greater than its estimated recoverable service amount, it is written down immediately to its recoverable amount (i.e. impairment losses are recognised).

### 1.5 Financial instruments

A financial instrument is any contract that gives rise to a financial asset of one entity and a financial liability or a residual interest of another entity.

### Initial recognition

The NIHSS recognises a financial asset or a financial liability in its statement of financial position when the entity becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument.

### Initial measurement

Financial assets and financial liabilities are measured at fair value plus, in case of a financial asset or financial liability not subsequently measured at fair value, transaction costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition or issue of financial instrument.

### 1.5.1 Financial assets

All financial assets of the NIHSS are categorised as Cash and cash equivalents, Receivables from exchange and non-exchange transactions. The classification depends on the nature and purpose of the financial assets and is determined at the time of initial recognition.

### Cash and cash equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents are stated at their fair value, which is the amount of cash on hand at year-end.

### Impairment of financial assets

Financial assets are assessed for indicators of impairment at each year end.

Financial assets are impaired where there is objective evidence that, as a result of one or more events that occurred after the initial recognition of the financial asset, the estimated future cash flows of the investment have been impacted. For financial assets carried at amortised cost, the amount of the impairment is the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows, discounted at the original effective interest rate.

The carrying amount of the financial asset is reduced by the impairment loss directly for all financial assets with the exception of trade receivables where the carrying amount is reduced through the use of an allowance account. When a trade receivable is uncollectible, it is written off against the allowance account. Subsequent recoveries of amounts previously written off are credited against the allowance account. Changes in the carrying amount of the allowance account are recognised in the surplus or deficit.

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### Derecognition

A financial asset shall be derecognised when the NIHSS realises the contractual rights to benefits specified in the contract, the rights expire and the NIHSS surrenders those rights, or the NIHSS loses control of the contractual rights that comprise a financial assets.

On derecognition, the difference between the carrying amount of the financial asset and the sum of the proceeds received shall be recognised in the net surplus or deficit for the period.

### 1.5.2 Financial liabilities

Financial liabilities include Trade and other payables from exchange and non-exchange transactions.

All financial liabilities of the NIHSS are classified as financial liabilities at amortised cost. The classification depends on the nature and purpose of the financial liabilities and is determined at the time of initial recognition.

### Other financial liabilities

Other financial liabilities are initially measured at fair value, net of transaction costs.

Other financial liabilities are subsequently measured at amortised cost using the effective interest method, with interest expense recognised on an effective yield basis.

The effective interest method is a method of calculating the amortised cost of a financial liability and of allocating interest expense over the relevant period. The effective interest rate is the rate that exactly discounts estimated future cash payments through the expected life of the financial liability or, where appropriate, a shorter period.

### Derecognition

A financial liability is derecognised when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged, cancelled or expires. On derecognition, the difference between the carrying amount of the financial liability and the amount paid is included in the net surplus or deficit for the period.

### Offsetting financial instruments

Financial assets and financial liabilities are offset if there is any intention to either settle on a net basis, or realise the asset and settle the liability simultaneously and a legally enforceable right to offset exists

### 1.6 Tax

No provision has been made for taxation, as the NIHSS is exempt from income tax in terms of Section 10 (1) (cA) (i) of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

### 1.7 Leases

A lease is classified as a finance lease if it transfers substantially all the risks and rewards incidental to ownership. A lease is classified as an operating lease if it does not transfer substantially all the risks and rewards incidental to ownership.

Finance leases refer to a contract that transfers the risks, rewards, rights and obligations incidental to ownership to the lessee and is recorded as a purchase of property, plant and equipment by means of long-term borrowing. All other leases are classified as operating leases.

Payments made under operating leases (leases other than finance leases) are charged to the Statement of Financial Performance on a straight-line basis over the period of the lease. When an operating lease is terminated before the lease period has expired, any payment required to be made to the lessor by way of penalty is recognised as an expense in the period in which termination takes place.

### 1.7.1 Finance leases - lessee

Finance leases are recognised as assets and liabilities in the Statement of Financial Position at amounts equal to the fair value of the leased property or, if lower, the present value of the minimum lease payments. The corresponding liability to the lessor is included in the Statement of Financial Position as a finance lease obligation.

Minimum lease payments are apportioned between the finance charge and reduction of the outstanding liability. The finance charge is allocated to each period during the lease term so as to produce a constant periodic rate on the remaining balance of the liability. This has been disclosed under Note 10 of the Annual Financial Statements.

### 1.7.2 Operating leases - lessee

Operating lease payments are recognised as an expense on a straight-line basis over the lease term. The difference between the amounts recognised as an expense and the contractual payments are recognised as an operating lease asset or liability.

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### 1.8 Inventories

Inventories consist of consumables on hand at the reporting date and are measured at cost. An individual inventory item whose cost does not exceed R1 000 is recognised, on acquisition, in surplus or deficit.

Inventories are subsequently measured at the lower of cost and net replacement value.

### 1.9 Employee benefits

The cost of employee benefits is recognised during the period in which the employee renders the related service. Employee entitlements are recognised when they accrue to employees. A provision is made for the estimated liability as a result of services rendered by employees up to the reporting date.

Termination benefits are recognised and expensed only when the payment is made.

Liabilities for annual leave are recognised as they accrue to employees. The NIHSS recognises the leave obligation during the vesting period based on the best available estimate of the accumulated leave expected to vest. The liability is based on the total amount of leave days due to employees at year end and also on the total remuneration package of the employee. The leave liability is recognised as an accrual. This has been disclosed under Note 9 of the Annual Financial Statements.

No provision has been made for retirement benefits as the NIHSS does not provide for retirement benefits for its employees.

### 1.10 Provisions and contingencies

Provisions are recognised when the NIHSS has a present legal or constructive obligation as a result of a past event; and it is probable that an outflow of economic benefits or service potential will be required or can be made to settle the obligation.

Provisions are measured as management's best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the obligation at the reporting date and are discounted to present value where the amount of the provision is material.

Contingent liabilities are possible obligations whose existence will be confirmed by the occurrence or non-occurrence of an uncertain future event not wholly within the control of the NIHSS. Contingent liabilities are not recognised but are disclosed in the notes to these financial statements, unless the possibility of an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits or service potential is remote.

### 1.11 Revenue

Revenue is recognised when it is probable that future economic benefits will flow to the NIHSS and these benefits can be measured reliably.

#### 1.11.1 Revenue from exchange transactions

Revenue from exchange transactions is recognised when it is probable that future economic benefits or service potential will flow to the NIHSS and these benefits can be measured reliably. Revenue is measured at the fair value of the consideration received or receivable.

Interest income is accrued on a time proportionate basis, taking into account the principal outstanding and effective interest rate over the period to maturity.

#### 1.11.2 Revenue from non-exchange transactions

Non-exchange revenue transactions result in resources being received by the NIHSS, usually in accordance with a binding arrangement.

When the NIHSS receives resources as a result of a non-exchange transaction, it recognises an asset and revenue in the period that the arrangement becomes binding and when it is probable that the NIHSS will receive economic benefits or service potential and it can make a reliable measure of the resources transferred.

Where the resources transferred to the NIHSS are subject to the fulfilment of specific conditions, it recognises an asset and a corresponding liability. As and when the conditions are fulfilled, the liability is reduced and revenue is recognised.

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The asset and the corresponding revenue are measured on the basis of the fair value of the asset on initial recognition. The following sources of receipts are considered revenue from non-exchange transactions:

*Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) - operations funding*

- The MTEF (Medium Term Expenditure Framework - three year rolling government budget) allocated funding received from the DHET.
- The funding for the NIHSS operations is not conditional and revenue is recognised when the funds are received.

*National Skills Fund (NSF)*

- The NSF funds all the NIHSS award projects (including the African Pathway scholarship).
- The funds, from inception of the NIHSS until 31 March 2020, for the projects were conditional and revenue is only recognised to the extent that expenditure is incurred.
- The funds from 1 April 2020 are not conditional and therefore revenue recognised in the period that the arrangement becomes binding.

### 1.12 Fruitless and wasteful expenditure

Fruitless expenditure means expenditure which was made in vain and would have been avoided had reasonable care been exercised.

All expenditure relating to fruitless and wasteful expenditure is recognised as an expense in the statement of financial performance in the year that the expenditure was incurred. The expenditure is classified in accordance with the nature of the expense, and where recovered it is subsequently accounted for as revenue in the Statement of Financial Performance.

### 1.13 Irregular expenditure

Irregular expenditure is expenditure other than unauthorised expenditure, incurred in contravention of or that is not in accordance with the NIHSS supply chain policy.

### 1.14 Reserves

Any surplus funds at the end of the financial year are retained and utilised for project expenditure in the new financial year.

### 1.15 Related parties

Parties are considered to be related if one party has the ability to control the other party or exercise significant influence over the other party in making financial and operating decisions or if the related party entity or another entity are subject to common control.

Where such a situation exists, the nature and type of transactions and relationships between parties are disclosed in the notes to these financial statements.

### 1.16 Commitments

Commitments are disclosed where the NIHSS has, in the normal course of its operations, entered into a contractual agreement with third parties for project expenses which are yet due for payment.

Commitments are measured at the amount the entity would pay to settle the obligation, to a third party at reporting date.

Commitments are included in the disclosure note to these financial statements.

### 1.17 Reporting period

The reporting period for the 2021/22 financial year is over a 12-month period.

### 1.18 Comparatives

The NIHSS was established on 5 December 2013. The financial period for the 2020/21 financial year is over a 12-month period from 1 April 2020 to 31 March 2021.

Where there has been a change in accounting estimate to the extent that it gives rise to changes in assets and liabilities, or relates to an item of net assets, the change is recognised by adjusting the carrying amount of the related asset, liability or item of net assets in the period of the change. The comparative amounts are therefore not adjusted.

## ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### 1.19 Budget information

The approved budget covers the fiscal period from 1 April 2021 to 31 March 2022.

These financial statements and the approved budget are on the same basis of accounting, therefore, a comparison of actual performance with budgeted amounts for the reporting period has been included in the statement of comparison of budget and actual amounts.

### 1.20 Events after reporting date

Events after reporting date are those events, whether favourable and unfavourable, that occur between the reporting date and the date when the financial statements are approved. Two types of events can be identified:

- those that provide evidence of conditions that existed at the reporting date (adjusting events after the reporting date); and
- those that are indicative of conditions that arose after the reporting date (non-adjusting events after the reporting date).

The NIHSS will adjust the amount recognised in the financial statements to reflect adjusting events after the reporting date once the event occurred.

The NIHSS will disclose the nature of the event and an estimate of its financial effect or a statement that such estimate cannot be made in respect of all material non-adjusting events, where non-disclosure could influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the financial statements.

### 1.21 Significant judgments and sources of estimation uncertainty

In preparing these financial statements, management is required to make judgements, estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts represented in these financial statements and related disclosures. Use of available information and the application of judgement is inherent in the formation of estimates. Actual results in the future could differ from these estimates which may be material to these financial statements.

The following are the key assumptions concerning the future, and other key sources of estimation uncertainty at year end, that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year:

#### Estimation of useful lives and residual value

An assessment is done at each reporting period whether there is any indication that the entity's expectation about the residual values and the useful lives of property, plant and equipment and intangible assets have changed since the preceding reporting period. If any such indication exists, an estimation of the revised expected useful lives and/or residual values is done.

#### Impairment of assets

The NIHSS assesses its receivables for impairment at the end of each reporting period. In determining whether an impairment loss should be recorded in surplus or deficit, management makes judgements as to whether there is observable data indicating a measurable decrease in the estimated future cash flows from receivables.

#### Segment reporting

Management have assessed that the NIHSS operates as one segment both geographically and in service offering. Therefore, Management have not divided the financial information into different segments as required by GRAP 18.

## 2. General information

The creation of the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences (NIHSS) to dynamise these fields of study in South Africa's higher education system emerged out of a wide ranging consultative process inaugurated by the then Minister of Higher Education and Training, Dr Bonginkosi Blade Nzimande.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

---

In 2010, the then Minister of Higher Education and Training appointed a task team to develop a Charter on humanities and social sciences. This was aimed at affirming the importance of humanities and social sciences as forms of scholarship. The final Report of the Charter was submitted to the Minister at the time on 4 August 2011. One of the key recommendations of the Report was the establishment of an institute for the promotion of humanities and social sciences.

Guided by the overwhelming support for the recommendations from the stakeholders across the entire cultural divide and the establishment of the institute in particular, the Minister then provided for establishment of the National Institute for the Humanities and Social Sciences (NIHSS) through the Government Gazette Notice No. 37118 on 5 December 2013.

The scope of the NIHSS is that of advancing and coordinating scholarship, research and ethical practice in the fields of the humanities and the social sciences within and through the existing public universities and those to be established or declared in future as public universities.

### **The functions of the NIHSS are to:**

- a. provide services to the higher education sphere within the humanities and social sciences
- b. Advance learning within the specific scope or application of the Institute by ensuring collaboration, co-ordination or collaboration and co-ordination of the work of higher education institutions; and
- c. advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on matters relating to its specific scope or application, or higher education generally.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 3. New standards and interpretations

#### 3.1 Standards issued, but not yet effective

At the date of authorisation of these financial statements, there are standards and interpretations in issue but not yet effective.

These include the following standards and interpretations that are applicable to the NIHSS and may have an impact on future financial statements:

| Standard/ Interpretation:                              | Effective date:   | Expected impact:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GRAP 104 - Financial Instruments (Revised 2019)        | 2025/26           | The standard provides guidance on how an entity recognises a financial asset or a financial liability in its statement of financial position when, and only when, the entity becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument.<br><br>The amendments to the standard are not effective as at end of financial year. |
| GRAP 25 Employee Benefits                              | No date announced | The standard provides guidance on the recognition of all forms of consideration given by an entity in exchange for services rendered by employees or for the termination of employment. The amendments to the standard are not effective as at end of financial year.                                                              |
| IGRAP 21 - The Effect of Past Decisions on Materiality | 1 April 2022      | This Interpretation explains the implications of adopting accounting policies for material items based on Standards of GRAP as well as applying alternative accounting treatments for immaterial items.                                                                                                                            |

#### 3.2 Standards not yet effective or relevant

The following standards and interpretations that have been issued but are not yet effective are not applicable to the NIHSS and will not have an impact on future financial statements:

| Standard/ Interpretation:                                                  | Effective date: | Expected impact:                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| IGRAP 7 Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset Min Fund Requirement and Interact | 1 April 2021    | No significant impact on future disclosures |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 4. Property, plant and equipment

| Figures in Rands                  | 2022              |                          |                  | 2021              |                          |                  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
|                                   | Cost              | Accumulated depreciation | Carrying value   | Cost              | Accumulated depreciation | Carrying value   |
| Office furniture and fittings     | 3 417 405         | (2 034 172)              | 1 383 233        | 3 417 405         | (1 692 431)              | 1 724 974        |
| Office equipment                  | 1 527 462         | (1 050 718)              | 476 744          | 1 474 691         | (1 330 709)              | 143 982          |
| Computer equipment                | 1 904 136         | (1 186 160)              | 717 976          | 1 625 524         | (1 091 059)              | 534 465          |
| Leasehold improvements            | 4 520 827         | (3 466 389)              | 1 054 438        | 3 805 572         | (3 261 375)              | 544 197          |
| Office equipment - project assets | 154 992           | (144 536)                | 10 456           | 154 992           | (129 794)                | 25 198           |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>11 524 822</b> | <b>(7 881 975)</b>       | <b>3 642 847</b> | <b>10 478 184</b> | <b>(7 505 368)</b>       | <b>2 972 816</b> |

## Reconciliation of property, plant and equipment - 2022

| Figures in Rands                  | Opening balance  | Additions        | Disposals       | Depreciation     | Total            |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Office furniture and fittings     | 1 724 974        | -                | -               | (341 740)        | 1 383 234        |
| Office equipment                  | 143 982          | 368 441          | (2 221)         | (33 458)         | 476 744          |
| Computer equipment                | 534 465          | 523 553          | (19 811)        | (320 231)        | 717 976          |
| Leasehold improvements            | 544 197          | 715 255          | -               | (205 014)        | 1 054 438        |
| Office equipment - project assets | 25 198           | -                | -               | (14 743)         | 10 455           |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>2 972 816</b> | <b>1 607 249</b> | <b>(22 032)</b> | <b>(915 186)</b> | <b>3 642 847</b> |

During the 2021/22 financial year, a total amount of R161 019 was incurred to repair and maintain various assets.

## Reconciliation of property, plant and equipment - 2021

| Figures in Rands                  | Opening balance  | Additions      | Disposals       | Depreciation     | Total            |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Office furniture and fittings     | 2 066 713        | -              | -               | (341 740)        | 1 724 973        |
| Office equipment                  | 419 043          | -              | -               | (275 060)        | 143 983          |
| Computer equipment                | 597 754          | 182 413        | (17 730)        | (227 972)        | 534 465          |
| Leasehold improvements            | 538 643          | -              | -               | 5 555            | 544 197          |
| Office equipment - project assets | 56 197           | -              | -               | (30 998)         | 25 198           |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>3 678 350</b> | <b>182 413</b> | <b>(17 730)</b> | <b>(870 215)</b> | <b>2 972 816</b> |

| Gross carrying value              | 2022             | 2021             |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Office furniture and fittings     | 1 383 234        | 1 724 973        |
| Office equipment                  | 476 744          | 143 983          |
| Computer equipment                | 717 976          | 534 465          |
| Leasehold improvements            | 1 054 438        | 544 197          |
| Office equipment - project assets | 10 455           | 25 198           |
| <b>Total</b>                      | <b>3 642 847</b> | <b>2 972 816</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 5. Intangible assets

| Figures in Rands                       | 2022             |                          |                  | 2021             |                          |                  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
|                                        | Cost             | Accumulated amortisation | Carrying value   | Cost             | Accumulated amortisation | Carrying value   |
| Computer software                      | 1 517 821        | (1 174 005)              | 343 816          | 1 331 591        | (938 655)                | 392 936          |
| Internally generated computer software | 3 666 771        | (2 366 724)              | 1 300 047        | 2 925 831        | (2 160 892)              | 764 939          |
| <b>Total</b>                           | <b>5 184 592</b> | <b>(3 540 729)</b>       | <b>1 643 863</b> | <b>4 257 422</b> | <b>(3 099 547)</b>       | <b>1 157 875</b> |

The NIHSS has developed a Grant Management system internally during the 2016/17, 2017/18, 2018/19, 2019/20, 2020/21 and 2021/22 financial years.

The cumulative expenses on developing the system have been recognised in the carrying amount of these intangible assets.

## Reconciliation of intangible assets - 2022

| Figures in Rands                       | Opening balance  | Additions      | Amortisation     | Total            |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Computer software                      | 392 936          | 186 229        | (235 349)        | 343 816          |
| Internally generated computer software | 764 939          | 740 940        | (205 832)        | 1 300 047        |
| <b>Total</b>                           | <b>1 157 875</b> | <b>927 169</b> | <b>(441 181)</b> | <b>1 643 863</b> |

## Reconciliation of intangible assets - 2021

| Figures in Rands                       | Opening balance  | Additions      | Amortisation     | Total            |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Computer software                      | 327 394          | 175 383        | (109 841)        | 392 936          |
| Internally generated computer software | 872 378          | 186 542        | (293 981)        | 764 939          |
|                                        | <b>1 199 772</b> | <b>361 925</b> | <b>(403 822)</b> | <b>1 157 875</b> |
|                                        |                  |                |                  |                  |
|                                        |                  |                | <b>2022</b>      | <b>2021</b>      |
| <b>Gross carrying value</b>            |                  |                |                  |                  |
| Computer software                      |                  |                | <b>1 643 863</b> | <b>1 199 772</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 6. Prepayments

| Figures in Rands       | Notes | 2022           | 2021           |
|------------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|
| Assets paid in advance |       | -              | -              |
| Rental paid in advance |       | 283 954        | 261 709        |
| Warranty prepayment    |       | -              | -              |
| Other prepayments      |       | -              | 266 445        |
| Medical aid prepayment |       | 45 471         | -              |
| <b>Total</b>           |       | <b>329 425</b> | <b>528 154</b> |

## 7. Receivables

## Receivables from exchange transactions

| Figures in Rands                                         | Notes | 2022             | 2021           |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|----------------|
| Interest receivable                                      | 24    | -                | -              |
| Recoverable amount of fruitless and wasteful expenditure |       | 329 519          | 298 661        |
| Other receivables                                        |       | 1 308 056        | 445 457        |
| <b>Total receivables from exchange transactions</b>      |       | <b>1 637 575</b> | <b>744 118</b> |

Included in Other Receivables is an amount of R859 599 which was awarded in terms of a court case, for legal costs in favour of the NIHSS. All attempts to recover the costs have been unsuccessful and as such a provision for doubtful debts has been raised and disclosed under Note 9.1.

## Receivables from non-exchange transactions

| Figures in Rands                                         | Notes | 2022     | 2021               |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------|--------------------|
| NSF receivable (Operations - project administration fee) |       | -        | 8 539 572          |
| DHET receivable (Awards NSF)                             |       | -        | 126 566 634        |
| <b>Total receivables from non-exchange transactions</b>  |       | <b>-</b> | <b>135 106 206</b> |

## 8. Cash and cash equivalents

| Figures in Rands                      | Notes | 2022               | 2021              |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Cash and cash equivalents consist of: |       |                    |                   |
| NIHSS Operating Bank Account          |       | 4 609 174          | 1 273 543         |
| NIHSS NSF Bank Account                |       | 48 220             | 5 456 988         |
| NIHSS Current bank (NSF)              |       | 13 960 428         | -                 |
| Cash on hand                          |       | 696                | 544               |
| Investments                           |       | 109 016 165        | 72 083 897        |
| <b>Total</b>                          |       | <b>127 634 683</b> | <b>78 814 972</b> |

Cash and cash equivalents comprise of cash held by NIHSS. The carrying amount of these assets approximates their fair values.

## 8.1 Cash and cash equivalents

| Figures in Rands | Notes | 2022          | 2021         |
|------------------|-------|---------------|--------------|
| Credit Card      |       | 58 912        | 6 252        |
| <b>Total</b>     |       | <b>58 912</b> | <b>6 252</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 9. Payables

#### Trade and other payables from exchange transactions

| Figures in Rands                  | Notes | 2022             | 2021             |
|-----------------------------------|-------|------------------|------------------|
| Trade payables                    |       | 2 511 965        | 3 520 359        |
| Trade accruals                    |       | 1 570 602        | 428 997          |
| Employees' payables - 13th cheque |       | 120 050          | 89 300           |
| Accrued leave pay                 |       | 691 732          | 623 096          |
|                                   |       | <b>4 894 348</b> | <b>4 661 752</b> |

The carrying amount of trade and other payables approximates their fair value due to the relatively short-term maturity of these financial liabilities.

#### Trade and other payables from non-exchange transactions

| Figures in Rands | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Trade payables   |       | 3 723 609         | 4 727 893         |
| Trade accruals   |       | 5 101 389         | 790 000           |
| Deferred Revenue |       | 25 948 381        | 79 589 883        |
|                  |       | <b>34 773 380</b> | <b>85 107 776</b> |

\*\* The trade payables relating to NSF (from inception of the NIHSS until 31 March 2020) have been accounted for as deferred revenue in line with GRAP 104. The funds for the projects (from inception of the NIHSS until 31 March 2020) are conditional and recognised as deferred revenue. Revenue is only recognised to the extent that expenditure is incurred.

### 9.1 Provisions

#### Provision for doubtful debts

| Figures in Rands               | Notes | 2022           | 2021     |
|--------------------------------|-------|----------------|----------|
| Opening carrying amount        |       | -              | -        |
| Additional amount provided     |       | 859 599        | -        |
| Amounts reversed/unrecoverable |       | -              | -        |
| Amounts recovered              |       | -              | -        |
| <b>Closing carrying amount</b> |       | <b>859 599</b> | <b>-</b> |

#### Provision for incentive

| Figures in Rands               | Notes | 2022             | 2021             |
|--------------------------------|-------|------------------|------------------|
| Opening carrying amount        |       | 1 071 856        | 1 081 310        |
| Amounts not utilised           |       | (332 789)        | (303 029)        |
| Amounts paid out/utilised      |       | (739 066)        | (778 281)        |
| Additional amount provided     |       | 928 717          | 1 071 856        |
| <b>Closing carrying amount</b> |       | <b>928 717</b>   | <b>1 071 856</b> |
| <b>Total Provisions</b>        |       | <b>1 788 316</b> | <b>1 071 856</b> |

The Provision relates to the following:

Provisions for doubtful debts relate to legal costs incurred on a litigation where their recoverability is uncertain. This was awarded in terms of a court case, for legal costs in favour of the NIHSS. All attempts to recover the amount have been unsuccessful. Provisions for performance incentives which are expected to be paid out before the end of August 2022. These are performance based and are driven by the employees' performance evaluations

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 10. Finance lease liability

| Figures in Rands                                             | Notes | 2022           | 2021     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|----------|
| Finance lease liability                                      | 17.2  | 228 322        | -        |
| Less: Short-term portion disclosed under current liabilities |       | (109 753)      | -        |
| <b>Non-current lease liability</b>                           |       | <b>118 569</b> | <b>-</b> |

## 11. Revenue

| Figures in Rands              | Notes | 2022              | 2021               |
|-------------------------------|-------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Investment revenue - interest |       | 3 972 803         | 755 085            |
| Government funding            |       | 93 029 664        | 239 610 093        |
| Other income                  |       | 917 545           | 29 619             |
| <b>Total</b>                  |       | <b>97 920 012</b> | <b>240 394 797</b> |

The amount included in revenue arising from exchanges of goods or services is as follows:

| Figures in Rands              | Notes | 2022      | 2021    |
|-------------------------------|-------|-----------|---------|
| Investment revenue - Interest |       | 3 972 803 | 755 085 |

The amount included in revenue arising from non-exchange transactions is as follows:

## Transfer revenue (Government funding)

| Figures in Rands                                                        | Notes | 2022              | 2021               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) - Operations funding |       | 30 104 000        | 38 140 572         |
| National Skills Fund (NSF) - Conditional                                |       | 62 925 664        | 78 202 887         |
| National Skills Fund (NSF) - Unconditional **                           |       | -                 | 123 266 634        |
| <b>Total Government funding</b>                                         |       | <b>93 029 664</b> | <b>239 610 093</b> |

\*\* The funding from the NSF for projects for the prior financial year was not conditional. Therefore revenue was recognised in full as required by GRAP 104 and GRAP23.

## 12. Employee-related costs

| Figures in Rands                        | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Basic salaries                          |       | 21 244 873        | 20 244 967        |
| Overtime                                |       | -                 | -                 |
| UIF                                     |       | 61 412            | 53 873            |
| SDL                                     |       | 208 865           | 133 273           |
| Acting Allowances                       |       | 775 783           | 330 530           |
| Medical Aid subsidy                     |       | 438 591           | -                 |
| Accrued leave pay                       |       | 68 636            | 595 383           |
| Arbitration awards                      |       | -                 | 3 255             |
| Performance Incentives                  |       | 595 927           | 768 827           |
| Provident Fund - Employer Contributions |       | 51 972            | 503 118           |
| Temporary Staff                         |       | 81 391            | -                 |
| Other deductions and payments withheld  |       | -18 845           | -                 |
| <b>Total</b>                            |       | <b>23 508 606</b> | <b>22 633 226</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 13. Project expenses

## Awards

| Figures in Rands                             | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|----------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Catalytic Projects                           |       | 2 255 669         | 5 810 407         |
| Humanities Hubs                              |       | 4 713 210         | 4 531 357         |
| Awards                                       |       | 1 350 000         | 770 000           |
| Evaluation Panels and Award Ceremony         |       | 7 494 889         | 6 545 479         |
| Working Groups                               |       | 19 500 339        | 28 324 290        |
| Professional Associations                    |       | 803 512           | 1 500 000         |
| BRICS ThinkTank                              |       | 9 322 414         | 5 386 498         |
| Skills Advisor                               |       | 736 500           | 825 000           |
| Covid-19 Research                            |       | 2 050 000         | -                 |
| 5 year strategic plan                        |       | 10 000            | -                 |
| Emeriti Professors                           |       | 4 300 000         | 3 887 500         |
| National Doctoral Conference                 |       | 9 244 980         | 5 372 762         |
| National and Regional workshops and seminars |       | 1 501 042         | 1 248 567         |
| Workshop Costs (project) travel              |       | -                 | 27 027            |
| <b>Total awards</b>                          |       | <b>63 282 555</b> | <b>64 228 887</b> |
| African Pathways (NSF funded scholarships)   |       | 1 056 000         | 660 000           |
| SAHUDA (NSF funded scholarships)             |       | 24 131 000        | 13 314 000        |
| <b>Total scholarships</b>                    |       | <b>25 187 000</b> | <b>13 974 000</b> |
| <b>Total project expenses</b>                |       | <b>88 469 555</b> | <b>78 202 887</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 14.1 General expenses

| Figures in Rands                     | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|--------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Audit fees - external                |       | 873 986           | 900 014           |
| Audit fees - internal                |       | -                 | 295 235           |
| Advertising and Promotions           |       | 330 595           | 314 341           |
| Bank Charges                         |       | 20 587            | 20 486            |
| Board Member Emoluments              |       | 526 497           | 370 460           |
| Cleaning                             |       | 167 103           | 285 131           |
| Consulting Fees                      |       | 928 395           | 1 202 827         |
| Courier and Postages                 |       | 9 638             | 600               |
| Insurance                            |       | 243 353           | 232 912           |
| Internet Costs                       |       | 4 399             | -4 880            |
| Loss on disposal of asset            |       | -                 | 17 730            |
| Rental of equipment - finance costs  |       | 39 796            | 4 804             |
| Legal Fees                           |       | 53 663            | 1 126 774         |
| Licenses                             |       | 655 287           | 507 649           |
| Printing and Stationery              |       | 342 571           | 140 611           |
| Rates and Taxes                      |       | 83 099            | 78 050            |
| Repairs and Maintenance              | 4     | 161 019           | 138 684           |
| Security Expenses                    |       | 3 533             | 2 243             |
| Small assets                         |       | 83 242            | 7 839             |
| Groceries                            |       | 62 020            | 36 674            |
| Staff Recruitment                    |       | 293 074           | -                 |
| Staff Refreshments                   |       | 360 958           | 77 201            |
| Staff Training                       |       | 662 839           | 833 830           |
| Staff Welfare                        | 25    | 671 359           | 778 523           |
| Subscriptions to professional bodies |       | 400 679           | 86 621            |
| Supplies and Services                |       | 724 845           | 688 221           |
| Telephone and Fax                    |       | 522 885           | 757 227           |
| Travel & Accommodation               |       | 897 949           | 595 529           |
| Water and Electricity                |       | 925 859           | 817 474           |
| Workmens Compensation                |       | 73 938            | 64 710            |
| Workshop Costs (operational)         |       | 2 160 665         | 1 693 481         |
| Bad debts                            |       | 859 599           | -                 |
| <b>Total</b>                         |       | <b>13 143 432</b> | <b>12 071 001</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 14.2 Project administration fee

| Figures in Rands                 | Notes | 2022             | 2021             |
|----------------------------------|-------|------------------|------------------|
| Doctoral Schools                 |       | -                | 1 274            |
| Workshop costs (project)         |       | 1 089 395        | 39 330           |
| NSF project administration costs |       | 2 283 500        | 2 019 501        |
|                                  |       | <b>3 372 895</b> | <b>2 060 105</b> |

## 15. Investment revenue

| Figures in Rands                                  | Notes | 2022             | 2021           |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|----------------|
| Net interest income received per income statement |       | 3 972 803        | 755 085        |
| Investment income                                 |       | <b>3 972 803</b> | <b>755 085</b> |

## 16. Net cash flows from operating activities

| Figures in Rands                                                     | Notes | 2022              | 2021                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|---------------------|
| (Deficit) / Surplus for the year                                     |       | (35 337 557)      | 120 695 512         |
| <b>Adjustments for:</b>                                              |       |                   |                     |
| Gain on disposal of assets                                           |       | (7 828)           | (15 900)            |
| Depreciation and amortisation                                        |       | 1 356 369         | 1 274 037           |
| (Decrease) / Increase in operating and finance lease liability       |       | 416 414           | 428 555             |
| Bad debts                                                            |       | 859 599           | -                   |
| Increase in provisions relating to employee cost                     |       | 109 386           | -                   |
| Movement in provisions                                               |       | 716 460           | -                   |
| <b>Changes in working capital:</b>                                   |       |                   |                     |
| (Increase) in inventories                                            |       | (283 504)         | (18 236)            |
| (Increase) in receivables from exchange transactions and prepayments |       | (649 257)         | 954 216             |
| Decrease / (Increase) in receivables from non-exchange transactions  |       | 135 106 206       | (135 106 206)       |
| Increase in trade and other payables from exchange transactions      |       | 2 503 216         | (3 807 577)         |
| Increase in trade and other payables from non-exchange transactions  |       | (53 641 499)      | (62 011 472)        |
| Increase / (Decrease) in retained earnings                           |       | -                 | -                   |
|                                                                      |       | <b>51 148 005</b> | <b>(77 607 071)</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 17. Commitments

## 17.1. Operating lease commitments - As lessee (expense)

| Figures in Rands                      | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|---------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Minimum lease payments due:           |       |                   |                   |
| • within one year                     |       | 3 430 176         | 3 430 176         |
| • in second to fifth year (inclusive) |       | 6 860 352         | 10 290 528        |
|                                       |       | <b>10 290 528</b> | <b>13 720 704</b> |

A new lease agreement was entered into for a 5 year period beginning 1 April 2020 until 31 March 2025. The building is located on Erf 902, 24 St Andrews Road, Parktown.

## 17.2. Finance Lease Commitments - As Lessee

## Reconciliation of total future minimum lease payments and their present values:

|                                                                     | Present Value  | Interest      | Payment        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Due not later than one year (current liabilities)                   | 109 753        | 13 851        | 123 604        |
| Due later than one year and not later than five years (non-current) | 118 569        | 5 036         | 123 605        |
|                                                                     | <b>228 322</b> | <b>18 887</b> | <b>247 209</b> |

The Institute has entered into a finance lease agreement for the rental of 2 photocopying machines during the financial year. There are no annual escalation clauses associated with the leases. The leases have been accounted for in terms of GRAP 13. No provision has been made for the option to renew the leases on expiry.

## 17.3. Project Commitments

All Projects and African Pathway scholarships are funded by the National Skills Fund (NSF)

The contract period range from 1 to 3 years for all projects.

| Institution / Entity        | Programme                  | Reference     | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| University of Cape Town     | Catalytic Research Program | CRP01639B     | 150 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 75 000                                        | 75 000                             |
| University of Free State    | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-01 |                                    | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Cape Town     | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-10 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| Stellenbosch University     | Catalytic Research Program | CRP2018/01    | 123 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 123 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Zululand      | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-07 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Western Cape  | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-09 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| UNISA                       | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-06 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Kwazulu Natal | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-08 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| Nelson Mandela University   | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-05 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
|                             | Emiriti Professors         | NMP2021/22-12 | -                                  | 400 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 400 000                                       | -                                  |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity                                     | Programme                 | Reference     | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| University of Limpopo                                    | Emiriti Professors        | NMP2021/22-03 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
|                                                          | Emiriti Professors        | NMP2021/22-11 | -                                  | 400 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 400 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg                               | Emiriti Professors        | NMP2021/22-02 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                                          | Emiriti Professors        | NMP2021/22-04 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| Plus 94 Research Pty Ltd                                 | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/01C  | 120 750                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 120 750                                       | -                                  |
| Plus 94 Research Pty Ltd                                 | Working Groups Programme  | WGP20/01D     | 200 000                            |                                             | 410 870            |                        |             | 610 870                                       | -                                  |
| Plus 94 Research Pty Ltd                                 | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2021/01E  |                                    | 414 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 414 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                                          | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/03   | 100 000                            |                                             |                    |                        | 100 000     | -                                             | -                                  |
| University of Kwazulu Natal                              | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/04   | 1 600 000                          |                                             |                    |                        |             | 1 600 000                                     | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria                                   | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/05   | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 200 000                                       | 100 000                            |
| Wits University                                          | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/07   | 203 725                            |                                             |                    | 50                     |             | 203 775                                       | -                                  |
| Thabo Mbeki Foundation                                   | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/08   | 120 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 120 000                            |
| Human Sciences Research Council                          | Working Groups Programme  | WGP/2020/09   | 163 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 163 000                                       | -                                  |
| Mapungubwe National Park & World Heritage                | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201707HUB   | 600 000                            |                                             |                    |                        | 600 000     | -                                             | -                                  |
| The Hunterstoun Heritage Centre, University of Fort Hare | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201704HUB   | 284 200                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 284 200                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University, Johannesburg acting through             | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201708HUB_B | 305 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 244 000                                       | 61 000                             |
| Nelson Mandela University                                | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201709HUB_B |                                    | 1 000 000                                   |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | 500 000                            |
| University of the Western Cape                           | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201710HUB_B | 364 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 364 000                                       | -                                  |
| Lilliesleaf Trust                                        | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201713HUB_B | 344 510                            |                                             | 300 000            |                        |             | 644 510                                       | -                                  |
| Robben Island Museum                                     | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201711HUB_B | 400 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 400 000                            |
| Market Theatre Foundation                                | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201712HUB   | -                                  |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | -                                  |
| Market Theatre Foundation                                | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00201712HUB_B | 776 500                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 776 500                                       | -                                  |
| Javett Art Centre                                        | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00202102HUB   |                                    | 800 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 400 000                                       | 400 000                            |
| University of Cape Town                                  | Humanities Hubs Programme | 00202101HUB   | -                                  | 3 000 000                                   |                    |                        |             | 1 500 000                                     | 1 500 000                          |
| Bstyle Media                                             | Consultancy Agreement     |               | 8 754                              |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 8 754                              |
| Wits University Press                                    | Working Groups Programme  | WGP19/1136    | 200 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 200 000                                       | -                                  |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity             | Programme                         | Reference    | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| University of Johannesburg       | Working Groups Programme          | WGP19/1143   | 3 200 000                          |                                             | 800 000            |                        |             | 4 000 000                                     | -                                  |
| University of Mpumalanga         | Working Groups Programme          | WGP19/1148   | -                                  |                                             | 440 000            |                        |             | 270 000                                       | 170 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg       | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/08 | 99 600                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 99 600                             |
| Institute for Global Dialogue    | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/06 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 200 000                                       | 100 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg       | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/09 | 480 223                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 480 223                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                  | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/03 | 299 460                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 299 460                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal      | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/02 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg       | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/04 | 299 400                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 299 400                            |
| University of the Free State     | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/01 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| HSRC                             | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/07 | 100 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 100 000                                       | -                                  |
| Rhodes University                | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/05 | 295 200                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 295 200                            |
| University of Western Cape       | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/11 | 60 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 60 000                                        | -                                  |
| University of Limpopo            | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/08 | 60 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 60 000                                        | -                                  |
| University of Cape Town          | BRICS Joint NIHSS-CAS             | BC01/2019/10 | 85 530                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 85 530                                        | -                                  |
| Human Sciences Research Council  | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/03 | 60 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 60 000                             |
| University of Limpopo            | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/10 | 60 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 60 000                             |
| Institute for Global Dialogue    | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/02 | 180 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 180 000                            |
| Human Sciences Research Council  | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/07 | 60 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 60 000                                        | -                                  |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal      | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/05 | 178 800                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 178 800                            |
| University of Pretoria           | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/01 | 179 340                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 179 340                            |
| University of Venda              | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | JNI20/1033   | 178 800                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 178 800                            |
| University of Pretoria           | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | JNI20/1009   | 299 755                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 239 804                                       | 59 951                             |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal      | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | JNI20/1026   | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 120 000                                       | 180 000                            |
| North-West University            | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | JNI20/1017   | 296 760                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 118 704                                       | 178 056                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal      | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | JNI20/1047   | 297 300                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 118 920                                       | 178 380                            |
| Tshwane University of Technology | Joint International Collaboration | JNI20/1010   |                                    | 143 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 85 800                                        | 57 200                             |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity                          | Programme                         | Reference  | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| University of Johannesburg                    | Joint International Collaboration | JNI21/1050 |                                    | 190 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 114 000                                       | 76 000                             |
| Rhodes University                             | Joint International Collaboration | JNI21/1060 |                                    | 296 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 177 600                                       | 118 400                            |
| Wits University                               | Joint International Collaboration | JNI21/1036 |                                    | 295 300                                     |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 295 300                            |
| Tshwane University of Technology              | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1036 | 35 600                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 35 600                                        | -                                  |
| University of Free State                      | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1061 | 197 202                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 197 202                                       | -                                  |
| University of Limpopo                         | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1063 | 140 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 140 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1066 | 200 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 200 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1038 | 84 830                             |                                             | 12 283             |                        |             | 97 113                                        | -                                  |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                   | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1082 | 240 000                            |                                             | 150 000            |                        |             | 390 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1075 | 96 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 96 000                             |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                   | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1083 | 400 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 400 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg                    | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1020 | 179 721                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 179 721                                       | -                                  |
| University of Free State                      | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1079 | 350 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 210 000                                       | 140 000                            |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1001 | 200 000                            |                                             | 181 631            |                        |             | 381 631                                       | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg                    | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1084 | 66 580                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 66 580                                        | -                                  |
| Jacana Media                                  | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1085 | -                                  |                                             | 60 000             |                        |             | 60 000                                        | -                                  |
| Mapungubwe Institute for Strategic Reflection | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1087 | 500 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria                        | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1014 | -                                  |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | -                                  |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme          | WGP20/1070 | 140 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 140 000                                       | -                                  |
| Rhodes University                             | Working Groups Programme          | WGP21/1088 | -                                  | 600 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 240 000                                       | 360 000                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                   | Working Groups Programme          | WG01657C   | -                                  | 147 352                                     |                    |                        |             | 147 352                                       | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria                        | Working Groups Programme          | WGP21/1089 |                                    | 260 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 260 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria                        | Working Groups Programme          | WGP21/1003 | -                                  | 350 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | -                                  |
| Real African Publishers                       | Working Groups Programme          | WGP21/1001 | -                                  | 60 000                                      |                    |                        |             | 60 000                                        | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg                    | Working Groups Programme          | WGP21/1039 | -                                  | 400 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 320 000                                       | 80 000                             |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity                          | Programme                | Reference  | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| SAHO                                          | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1038 |                                    | 750 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 675 000                                       | 75 000                             |
| Jacana Media                                  | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1144 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| The Hani Legacy                               | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1044 |                                    | 458 535                                     |                    |                        |             | 229 268                                       | 229 268                            |
| Unisa                                         | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1031 |                                    | 207 451                                     |                    |                        |             | 124 470                                       | 82 980                             |
| Rhodes University                             | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1018 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| Stellenbosch University                       | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1046 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| University of Fort Hare                       | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1020 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg                    | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1116 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1143 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                   | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1053 |                                    | 498 600                                     |                    |                        |             | 299 160                                       | 199 440                            |
| HSRC Press                                    | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1145 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| Nelson Mandela University                     | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1107 |                                    | 473 020                                     |                    |                        |             | 283 812                                       | 189 208                            |
| Tshwane University of Technology              | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1091 |                                    | 200 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 120 000                                       | 80 000                             |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1131 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| University of South Africa                    | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1030 |                                    | 426 616                                     |                    |                        |             | 255 970                                       | 170 646                            |
| Wits University Press                         | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1002 |                                    | 430 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 258 000                                       | 172 000                            |
| Legacy Multimedia Solutions                   | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1146 |                                    | 400 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 310 000                                       | 90 000                             |
| Javett Art Centre at Univ of Pretoria         | Awards                   |            |                                    | 377 040                                     |                    |                        |             | 377 040                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1058 |                                    | 499 300                                     |                    |                        |             | 299 580                                       | 199 720                            |
| Wits University                               | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1128 |                                    | 260 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 156 000                                       | 104 000                            |
| University of Zululand                        | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1049 |                                    | 499 720                                     |                    |                        |             | 299 832                                       | 199 888                            |
| Mapungubwe Institute for Strategic Reflection | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1136 |                                    | 950 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 570 000                                       | 380 000                            |
| Winnie Madikizela Mandela Memorial            | Working Groups Programme | WGP21/1138 |                                    | 755 147                                     |                    |                        |             | 377 574                                       | 377 574                            |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity                              | Programme                         | Reference    | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| South African Humanities Deans Association        | Professional Associations         | PAP20/1016   | 500 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 500 000                            |
| Humanities and Social Sciences Alumni Association | Professional Associations         | PAP20/1017   | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| OHASA                                             | Professional Associations         | PAP21/1001   |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| South African Sociological Association            | Professional Associations         | PAP21/1003   | -                                  | 300 600                                     |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 300 600                            |
| Digital Humanities Association of Southern Africa | Professional Associations         | PAP21/1002   |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                       | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/06 | 180 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 180 000                            |
| Wits University                                   | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/04 | 299 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 119 600                                       | 179 400                            |
| University of Zululand                            | Brics Academic Cluster            | BC01/2020/09 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| University of Cape Town                           | Joint International Collaboration | JNI21/1029   |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 180 000                                       | 120 000                            |
| Cape Peninsula University of Technology           | BRICS Joint NIHSS-ICSS            | BMG21/1032   |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of South Africa                        | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1055   | 75 600                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 75 600                                        | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria                            | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1032   | 180 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 180 000                            |
| University of Cape Town                           | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1013   | 87 774                             |                                             |                    | 1                      |             | 87 775                                        | -                                  |
| University of Western Cape                        | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1101   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 240 000                                       | -                                  |
| Eastern Cape Audio Visual Centre                  | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1035   | 84 705                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 59 294                                        | 25 412                             |
| Nelson Mandela University                         | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1047   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 240 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Cape Town                           | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1061   | 30 000                             |                                             |                    |                        |             | 30 000                                        | -                                  |
| University of Kwazulu-Natal                       | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1020   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 240 000                            |
| University of Cape Town                           | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1026   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 240 000                            |
| Wits University                                   | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1056   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 240 000                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                       | Catalytic Research Programme      | CRP20/1019   | 240 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 240 000                                       | -                                  |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity           | Programme                    | Reference  | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Wits University                | Catalytic Research Programme | CRP20/1077 | 104 400                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 104 400                            |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal    | Catalytic Research Programme | CRP20/1098 | 105 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | -                                             | 105 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg     | Catalytic Research Programme | CRP20/1057 | 240 000                            |                                             | 300 000            |                        |             | 540 000                                       | -                                  |
| Unisa                          | Catalytic Research Programme | CRP20/1021 |                                    | 650 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 650 000                                       | -                                  |
| Walter Sisulu University       | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1012 | -                                  | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Limpopo          | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1016 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | 150 000                            |
| University of Zululand         | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1006 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Free State       | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1010 | -                                  | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | 150 000                            |
| University of Zululand         | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1014 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | 150 000                            |
| University of Johannesburg     | Catalytic Research Programme | CRC21/1015 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 350 000                                       | 150 000                            |
| North West University          | African Pathways Programme   | BMG20/1061 | 266 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 266 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria         | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1056 | 120 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 120 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Fort Hare        | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1022 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of South Africa     | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1083 | 290 400                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 290 400                                       | -                                  |
| University of Fort Hare        | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1032 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg     | African Pathways Programme   | BMG20/1062 | 500 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                | African Pathways Programme   | BMG20/1031 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of South Africa     | African Pathways Programme   | BMG20/1067 | 190 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 190 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Pretoria         | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1086 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| Walter Sisulu University       | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1037 | 300 000                            |                                             |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| Unisa                          | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1076 |                                    | 287 346                                     |                    |                        |             | 287 346                                       | -                                  |
| University of Free State       | African Pathways Programme   | AMG20/1074 |                                    | 215 620                                     |                    |                        |             | 215 620                                       | -                                  |
| Institute for Global Dialogue  | African Pathways Programme   | AMG21/1068 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| Rhodes University              | African Pathways Programme   | AMG21/1050 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of the Western Cape | African Pathways Programme   | AMG21/1018 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |             | 300 000                                       | -                                  |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Institution / Entity                             | Programme                          | Reference  | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Transfers/ Adjustments | Write backs    | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Wits University                                  | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1069 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |                | 500 000                                       | -                                  |
| South African Institute of International Affairs | African Pathways Programme         | BMG21/1022 |                                    | 294 754                                     |                    |                        |                | 294 754                                       | -                                  |
| Wits University                                  | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1030 |                                    | 284 864                                     |                    |                        |                | 284 864                                       | -                                  |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                      | African Pathways Programme         | BMG21/1065 |                                    | 128 700                                     |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 128 700                            |
| Walter Sisulu University                         | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1099 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| Rhodes University                                | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1037 |                                    | 289 300                                     |                    |                        |                | 289 300                                       | -                                  |
| Stellenbosch University                          | African Pathways Programme         | BMG21/1090 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 300 000                            |
| University of Pretoria                           | African Pathways Programme         | BMG21/1093 |                                    | 297 350                                     |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 297 350                            |
| University of Johannesburg                       | African Pathways Programme         | BMG21/1074 |                                    | 300 000                                     |                    |                        |                | 300 000                                       | -                                  |
| University of Johannesburg                       | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1111 |                                    | 270 000                                     |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 270 000                            |
| University of Fort Hare                          | African Pathways Programme         | AMG21/1081 |                                    | 38 252                                      |                    |                        |                | -                                             | 38 252                             |
| Durban University of Technology                  | South African BRICS Think Tank     | EGD21/1012 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |                | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
| Nelson Mandela University                        | South African BRICS Think Tank     | EGD21/1019 |                                    | 500 000                                     |                    |                        |                | 300 000                                       | 200 000                            |
|                                                  | National skills project initiative |            | 2 475 000                          |                                             |                    |                        |                | 736 500                                       | 1 738 500                          |
| <b>Total</b>                                     |                                    |            | <b>26 431 420</b>                  | <b>34 197 867</b>                           | <b>2 654 784</b>   | <b>51</b>              | <b>700 000</b> | <b>43 862 142</b>                             | <b>18 721 978</b>                  |
| <b>NSF project operational expenses ^</b>        |                                    |            |                                    |                                             |                    |                        |                | <b>19 420 413</b>                             |                                    |
| <b>Total</b>                                     |                                    |            |                                    |                                             |                    |                        |                | <b>63 282 555</b>                             |                                    |

^ These are operational expenses incurred to support the NSF projects that do not fall under a contract.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

| Scholarships (African Pathways)         | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Project refunds | Write backs | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| African Pathways Programme              | 66 000                             | 990 000                                     |                    |                 |             | 1 056 000                                     | -                                  |
| African Pathways operational expenses # | -                                  | -                                           |                    |                 |             | -                                             | -                                  |
| <b>Total</b>                            | <b>66 000</b>                      | <b>990 000</b>                              |                    |                 | <b>-</b>    | <b>1 056 000</b>                              | <b>-</b>                           |

# These are operational expenses incurred to support the African Pathways Programme.

| Scholarships (Sahuda) | Contractual value at 31 March 2021 | New contracts for year ending 31 March 2022 | Additional funding | Project refunds | Write backs   | Expenditure for the year ending 31 March 2022 | Contractual value at 31 March 2022 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Scholarships          | 918 000                            | 40 489 000                                  |                    |                 | 60 000        | 24 131 000                                    | 17 216 000                         |
| <b>Total</b>          | <b>918 000</b>                     | <b>40 489 000</b>                           |                    |                 | <b>60 000</b> | <b>24 131 000</b>                             | <b>17 216 000</b>                  |

## 18. Related parties

| Relationship                   |                                                    |  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--|
| Controlling entity:            | Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) |  |
| Entities under common control: | NSF                                                |  |

The DHET has a number of institutions and entities which reports to it, including universities, TVET colleges and SETAs. For the year under review, the NIHSS did not transact with any of those entities, except universities. All transactions with the universities have been disclosed under Note 17.3 Project Commitments. The nature of the transactions with universities is grants awarded to student for studies.

|                             |                                                               |                         |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Members of key management : | Prof Sarah Mosoetsa                                           | Chief Executive Officer |
|                             | Mr Tumelo Mokoena                                             | Chief Financial Officer |
| Members of the Board:       | Prof Aristides Sitas (Chairperson)                            |                         |
|                             | Prof Ahmed Bawa                                               |                         |
|                             | Dr Rene Smith                                                 |                         |
|                             | Dr Bernard Nthambeleni                                        |                         |
|                             | Prof Fiona Tregenna                                           |                         |
|                             | Mr Mahlubi Mabizela                                           |                         |
|                             | Ms Luli Callinicos                                            |                         |
|                             | Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize                                          |                         |
|                             | Ms Jacomien Rousseau                                          |                         |
|                             | Mr Thapelo Molapo                                             |                         |
|                             | Ms Nolwazi Mamorare                                           |                         |
|                             | Mr Ignatius Makgoka                                           |                         |
|                             | Prof Simphiwe Mini                                            |                         |
|                             | Ms Maleshini Naidoo (Chairperson of Audit and Risk Committee) |                         |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## Related party balances

| Figures in Rands                                   | 2022       | 2021        |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| <b>Receivables</b>                                 |            |             |
| Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) | -          | -           |
| <b>Payables</b>                                    |            |             |
| Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) | 25 948 381 | 79 589 883  |
| <b>Receivables</b>                                 |            |             |
| National Skills Fund                               | -          | 135 106 206 |

*All related party balances and transactions to DHET include the transfer to/from the National Skills Fund*

|                                                                 |                  |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Related party transactions</b>                               |                  |                  |
| <b>Transactions</b>                                             |                  |                  |
| <b>Revenue</b>                                                  |                  |                  |
| Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) and NSF      | 93 029 664       | 239 610 093      |
| <b>Remuneration - Members of key management</b>                 |                  |                  |
| Chief Executive Officer                                         | 1 884 942        | 1 816 104        |
| Chief Executive Officer - Secondment payment to Wits University | 1 089 993        | 1 065 781        |
| Chief Financial Officer                                         | 2 227 242        | 1 861 907        |
| <b>Total</b>                                                    | <b>5 202 177</b> | <b>4 743 792</b> |

*The key management group consists of the NIHSS' CEO and CFO.*

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## Remuneration - Board members

| Figures in Rands       | Re-imbursements<br>2021/22 | Board Fees<br>2021/22 | Total<br>2021/22 | Total<br>2020/21 |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Prof Aristides Sitas   | -                          | 60 897                | 60 897           | 47 936           |
| Prof Ahmed Bawa        | -                          | 14 676                | 14 676           | 14 676           |
| Dr Bernard Nthambeleni | -                          | 28 821                | 28 821           | 32 490           |
| Prof Fiona Tregenna    | -                          | 47 697                | 47 697           | 44 028           |
| Ms Luli Callinicos     | -                          | 51 366                | 51 366           | 40 359           |
| Ms Jacomien Rousseau   | -                          | -                     | -                | -                |
| Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize   | -                          | 42 313                | 42 313           | 31 306           |
| Dr Rene Smith          | -                          | 43 497                | 43 497           | 33 540           |
| Ms Nolwazi Mamorare    | -                          | 29 352                | 29 352           | 23 583           |
| Mr Thapelo Molapo      | -                          | 71 204                | 71 204           | 33 260           |
| Prof Sipiwe Mini       | -                          | 51 366                | 51 366           | 33 021           |
| Ms Maleshini Naidoo    | -                          | 36 261                | 36 261           | 36 261           |
| Mr Ignatius Makgoka    | -                          | 49 047                | 49 047           | -                |
| Mr Mahlubi Mabizela    | -                          | -                     | -                | -                |
| <b>Total</b>           | <b>-</b>                   | <b>526 497</b>        | <b>526 497</b>   | <b>370 461</b>   |

The Board consists of members appointed in terms of the Government Gazette 37118. Remuneration is paid to members.

NIHSS has remunerated members of the Board for attending Board and sub-committee meetings as disclosed above.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## Transactions made to organisations associated with Board members \*\*

| Figures in Rands                                       |                                                                                     | Notes | 2022              | 2021              |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Entities associated with Board members                 | Associating Board members                                                           |       |                   |                   |
| University of Cape Town                                | Prof Aristides Sitas                                                                |       | 3 887 793         | 2 396 927         |
| University of KwaZulu-Natal                            | Prof Nhlanhla Mkhize                                                                |       | 6 428 398         | 10 732 950        |
| Mapungubwe Institute for Strategic Reflection (MISTRA) | Ms Luli Callinicos                                                                  |       | 1 070 000         | -                 |
| University of Venda                                    | Dr Bernard N Nthambeleni and Prof Sarah Mosoetsa (CEO)                              |       | 1 187 000         | 791 200           |
| Durban University of Technology                        | Dr Rene Smith                                                                       |       | 1 186 000         | 33 000            |
| University of Johannesburg                             | Ms Nolwazi Mamorare                                                                 |       | 8 618 035         | 8 100 491         |
| Human Sciences Research Council                        | Ms Jacomien Rousseau, Ms Maleshini Naidoo and Fiona Tregenna (from 1 November 2021) |       | 823 000           | 1 787 000         |
| Deptment of Labour                                     | Prof Sarah Mosoetsa (CEO)                                                           |       | 73 974            | 64 710            |
| University of the Witwatersrand ***                    | Dr Rene Smith (from 1 January 2022) and Prof Sarah Mosoetsa (CEO)                   |       | 6 665 454         | 6 039 151         |
| <b>Total</b>                                           |                                                                                     |       | <b>29 939 653</b> | <b>29 945 429</b> |

\*\* These transactions are between the NIHSS and the entities that are associated with Board members/CEO.

All transactions above occurred under terms that were no more favourable than those available in similar arm's length dealings.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 19. Risk management

The focus of risk management in the NIHSS is on identifying, assessing, managing and monitoring all known forms of risk across the NIHSS. While operating risk cannot be fully eliminated, management endeavours to minimise it by ensuring that the appropriate infrastructure, controls, systems and ethics are applied throughout the NIHSS and managed within predetermined procedures and constraints.

As the NIHSS acquires finance from DHET and does not have borrowed funds, it does not have major exposure to credit, liquidity, interest and market risk.

#### Liquidity risk

Liquidity risk is the risk that the NIHSS will not be able to meet its financial obligations as they fall due. Ultimate responsibility for liquidity risk management rests with the DHET, which has built an appropriate liquidity risk management framework for the management of the NIHSS' short, medium and long term funding and liquidity management requirements. The liquidity risk as pertains to the finance lease is minimal and therefore has not been included in the analysis.

| 2021/22                             | 6 months or less | 6-12 months | 1-2 years |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|-----------|
| Payables from exchange transactions | 4 894 352        | -           | -         |
| 2020/21                             | 6 months or less | 6-12 months | 1-2 years |
| Payables from exchange transactions | 4 661 752        | -           | -         |

#### Credit risk

Credit risk is the risk that one party to a financial instrument will cause a financial loss for the other party by failing to meet an obligation. Credit risk arises from cash and cash equivalents, and deposits with banks and financial institutions, as well as outstanding receivables and committed transactions. For banks and financial institutions, only highly reputable financial institutions are used and funds are invested in short-term deposits and call accounts. As such, the NIHSS is not exposed to significant credit risk related to the risk or loss of interest earned on cash and cash equivalents.

#### 2021/22

| The ageing of receivables from exchange transactions: | Gross            | Impairment       | 2022: Total    |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Not past due*                                         | 1 189 118        | (859 599)        | 329 519        |
| Past due for greater than 1 year                      | 448 457          | -                | 448 457        |
|                                                       | <b>1 637 575</b> | <b>(859 599)</b> | <b>777 976</b> |

\*Not past due is defined as when a counterparty has failed to make a payment when contractually due. As such, the receivable as relates to the recovery of legal costs are not past due.

| The ageing of receivables from non-exchange transactions: | Gross       | Impairment | 2022: Total |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Not past due                                              | -           | -          | -           |
| The ageing of cash and cash equivalents                   | Gross       | Impairment | 2021: Total |
| Not past due                                              | 127 634 683 | -          | 127 634 683 |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 2020/21

| The ageing of receivables from exchange transactions:     | Gross       | Impairment | 2021: Total |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Not past due                                              | 744 118     | -          | 744 118     |
| The ageing of receivables from non-exchange transactions: | Gross       | Impairment | 2021: Total |
| Not past due                                              | 135 106 206 | -          | 135 106 206 |
| The ageing of cash and cash equivalents:                  | Gross       | Impairment | 2021: Total |
| Not past due                                              | 78 814 972  | -          | 78 814 972  |

### Market risk

No significant events occurred during the year in the market that NIHSS is aware of.

### Interest rate risk

The NIHSS has limited exposure to interest rate risk. NIHSS' cash and cash equivalents are subject to interest rate risk for the portion of interest received. The interest rate risk is limited as funds are invested with one of the four major banks and this is assessed annually. The funds are invested in short-term deposits and call accounts and as such, the NIHSS is not exposed to significant interest rate risk related to fluctuations in the interest rate for interest earned or charged cash and cash equivalents. The amount of cash and cash equivalents as well as interest earned has been disclosed on the face of the Statement of Financial Position as well as Note 15.

### 20. Events after the reporting date

No adjusting events after the reporting date occurred that the NIHSS is aware of.

### 21. Budget differences

#### Notes to Statement of comparison of budget and actual amounts

| Item                          | Reason                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Investment revenue            | Some of the interest from investments from the projects funding has been processed to the deferred revenue account.                                                                                   |
| Government funding            | The full allocation of funding for operations was received in the financial year. For the 2021/22 financial year, funding was not received from the NSF for project expenditure, as at 31 March 2022. |
| Employee-related costs        | The employee related costs were under the budget due to vacant positions yet to be filled at year-end.                                                                                                |
| Depreciation and amortisation | The variance is due to less asset additions during the 2021/22 financial year. All assets purchased were budgeted for.                                                                                |
| Rent and utilities            | Rent is under budget due to the effects of lease smoothing as required by GRAP 13. The variance is within the threshold required by the Financial Management policy.                                  |
| Project expenses              | The NIHSS did not receive 2021/22 funding from the NSF, for project expenditure. As such, the expenditure is below budget. Projects were funded from reserves.                                        |
| General expenses              | General expenses were incurred during the financial year and in line with budget. The amount over budget was financed from funds received during the year, not initially budgeted for.                |
| Project administration fee    | The project administration expenditure was within budget.                                                                                                                                             |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

## 22. Financial instruments disclosure

## Categories of financial instruments

2021/22

## Financial assets

| Figures in Rands                           | At Fair Value      | Total              |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Receivables from exchange transactions     | 1 637 575          | 1 637 575          |
| Receivables from non-exchange transactions | -                  | -                  |
| Cash and cash equivalents                  | 127 634 683        | 127 634 683        |
| <b>Total</b>                               | <b>129 272 258</b> | <b>129 272 258</b> |

| Financial liabilities                               | At amortised cost | Total            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Trade and other payables from exchange transactions | 4 894 352         | 4 894 352        |
| <b>Total</b>                                        | <b>4 894 352</b>  | <b>4 894 352</b> |

2020/21

## Financial assets

| Figures in Rands                           | At Fair Value      | Total              |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Receivables from exchange transactions     | 744 118            | 744 118            |
| Receivables from non-exchange transactions | 135 106 206        | 135 106 206        |
| Cash and cash equivalents                  | 78 814 972         | 78 814 972         |
| <b>Total</b>                               | <b>214 665 296</b> | <b>214 665 296</b> |

| Financial liabilities                               | At amortised cost | Total            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Trade and other payables from exchange transactions | 4 661 752         | 4 661 752        |
| <b>Total</b>                                        | <b>4 661 752</b>  | <b>4 661 752</b> |

## 23. Contingencies

|                        | At amortised cost | Total    |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------|
| Contingent liabilities | -                 | -        |
| <b>Total</b>           | <b>-</b>          | <b>-</b> |

2021/22

No possible obligation was identified during the 2021/22 financial year.

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 2020/21

No possible obligation was identified during the 2020/21 financial year.

### Contingent asset

#### 2021/22

#### NSF project funding

A possible asset of **R109 435 708** exists due to NSF funding for project for 2021/22 not yet received as at the end of the financial year. As at financial year-end, all submissions for funding had been made to NSF and therefore the asset is contingent upon finalisation of the process by NSF as well as conclusion and signing of the 2021/22 contract between NSF and NIHSS.

#### Scholarships defaults

No contingent asset was identified during the financial year. Upon conclusion of the investigation of the contingent assets raised prior year it was concluded that the amounts were un-recoverable as the students were not contractually obligated to refund should they default.

### 2020/21

A possible asset of **R924 000** exists due to scholarship beneficiaries who could possibly have defaulted in terms of their contractual agreements with the institute. As at financial year-end, a further investigations were still ongoing for students with contractual obligation and therefore the asset is contingent upon finalisation of the process.

## 24. Fruitless and wasteful expenditure

### 2021/22

The opening balance of fruitless and wasteful expenditure relates to fraudulent transactions that were done by a former staff member in the 2016/17 financial year. The former employee has been paying back the funds owed from the 2017/18 financial year to date. Also included is an amount of **R177 069** which was as a result of a cyber crime that occurred prior year. The matter is still under investigation with SAPS. During 2021/22 the Institute incurred a penalty to an amount of **R32 658** as result of late payment of the PAYE, SDL and UIF during the fourth quarter of the financial year.

### 2020/21

The fruitless and wasteful expenditure balance relates to the alleged fraudulent transaction that were done by staff member during 2016/17. The employee has paid back a portion of the funds owed to the NIHSS in the 2017/18 to date. During the 2020/21 financial year, the NIHSS became a victim of cyber crime at the beginning of the lockdown period (April 2020), whereby an amount of **R532 890** was embezzled. Due to an internal investigation and assistance of the bank, an amount of **R355 821** was recovered. A criminal case with the South African Police has been opened and it is anticipated that the balance of **R177 069** will be recovered through the police investigation.

### Reconciliation of fruitless and wasteful expenditure:

| Figures in Rands                                            | Notes | 2022           | 2021           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|
| Opening Balance                                             |       | 298 661        | 124 791        |
| Fruitless and wasteful expenditure recovered                |       | (1 800)        | (359 021)      |
| Fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred                 |       | 32 658         | 532 891        |
| Fruitless and wasteful expenditure condoned                 |       | -              | -              |
| <b>Fruitless and wasteful expenditure awaiting recovery</b> |       | <b>329 519</b> | <b>298 661</b> |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 25. Irregular expenditure

#### 2021/22

There was no irregular expenditure incurred during the 2021/22 financial year.

#### 2020/21

There was no irregular expenditure incurred during the 2020/21 financial year.

### 26. Going concern

These financial statements have been prepared based on the expectation that the NIHSS will continue to operate as a going concern for at least the next 12 months. Management's assessment revealed that the NIHSS's ability to continue as a going concern was not significantly affected by COVID-19. Furthermore, a review process was conducted by a review panel as appointed by the Minister and assessed the mandate of the NIHSS with a recommendation send through to the Department in terms of its extention. During the review of the mandate, a budget was allocated and approved for prior year as well as current year ended 31 March 2022. The Annual Performance Plan for the financial year ended 31 March 2023 has been submitted to the DHET Furthermore, a budget vote has been approved for the NIHSS for the next 3 financial years in terms of the Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

### 27. Significant judgments and sources of estimation uncertainty

#### Estimation of useful lives and residual value

Management are of the opinion that all assets of the NIHSS have a useful life that is equal to the economic life as assets are used to a point where they cannot be sold at an open market. Management therefore considers the residual value to not be material and significant.

#### Impairment of assets

Management are of the opinion that there is no objective evidence individually or in a group that the receivables will not be recoverable.

### 28. Change in accounting estimate

The useful lives of computer equipment, leasehold improvements and computer software are as follows:

|                               | Average useful life | Depreciation rates |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Office furniture and fittings | 9 - 11 years        | 9% - 11%           |
| Office equipment              | 3-5 years           | 33.33% - 20%       |
| Computer equipment            | 2- 4 years          | 25% - 50%          |
| Computer software             | 1-2 years           | 50% - 100%         |
| Leasehold improvements        | 3-5 years           | 33.33% - 20%       |

## NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

An assessment was done during the 2021/22 reporting period to ascertain whether there is any indication that the entity's expectation about the residual values and the useful lives of property, plant and equipment and intangible assets have changed since the preceeding reporting period. Such an indication did exist for a few items of computer equipment, leasehold improvements and computer software and the useful lives revised. This assessment affected only the following assets:

|                                        | Average useful life     | Depreciation rates |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Office equipment                       | Extended by 1 more year | 33.33% - 50%       |
| Computer equipment                     | Extended by 1 more year | 25% - 50%          |
| Computer software                      | Extended by 1 more year | 50% - 100%         |
| Leasehold improvements                 | Extended by 1 more year | 25% - 33.33%       |
| Internally generated computer software | Extended by 1 more year | 33.33% - 50%       |

The revised useful lives had the following effect on the carrying amounts of the assets:

|                                        | Average useful life         | Depreciation rates |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| Office equipment                       | Increase in carrying amount | 212 264            |
| Computer equipment                     | Increase in carrying amount | 120 589            |
| Computer software                      | Increase in carrying amount | 210 140            |
| Leasehold improvements                 | Increase in carrying amount | 407 584            |
| Internally generated computer software | Increase in carrying amount | 574 700            |
| Office equipment - projects            |                             | 5 466              |
| <b>Total</b>                           |                             | <b>1 530 744</b>   |

*The change above was recognised by adjusting the carrying amounts of the related assets.*

### 29. Prior period error

#### 2021/22

No prior period error was identified during the 2021/22 financial year.

#### 2020/21

No prior period error was identified during the 2020/21 financial year.

### 30. Events after reporting date

#### 2021/22

No event after reporting date was identified during the 2021/22 financial year.





Email: [info@nihss.ac.za](mailto:info@nihss.ac.za)  
Tel: +27 11 480 2300  
Fax: +27 11 482 3068

2nd floor, 24 St Andrews Road  
Johannesburg, Parktown  
Gauteng  
2193

Postnet Suite 413  
P/Bag X30500  
Houghton  
2041

---



NATIONAL INSTITUTE  
FOR THE HUMANITIES  
AND SOCIAL SCIENCES